Contents
A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

MINI CLUBMAN.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

MINI

Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

© 2016 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID5 X/16, 11 16 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

CONTENTS

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 266.

6 Information

AT A GLANCE
14 Cockpit
18 Onboard monitor
27 Voice activation system
30 General settings
40 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

CONTROLS
44 Opening and closing
62 Settings
73 Transporting children safely
78 Driving
94 Displays
112 Lights
118 Safety
135 Driving stability control systems
139 Driving comfort
157 Climate control
165 Interior equipment
172 Storage compartments
175 Cargo area

DRIVING TIPS
184 Things to remember when driving
188 Saving fuel

MOBILITY
198 Refueling
200 Fuel
202 Wheels and tires
221 Engine compartment
223 Engine oil
227 Coolant
229 Maintenance
231 Replacing components
242 Breakdown assistance
249 Care

REFERENCE
256 Technical data
260 Appendix
266 Everything from A to Z

INFORMATION

USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can also be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Dealer’s service center

A dealer’s service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

The Owner's Manual and general Information about MINI, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com.

MINI Motorer’s Guide app

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app for iOS or Android in the respective Store.

SYMBOLS AND DISPLAYS

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system..

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your BMW dealer’s service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ MINI Motorer’s Guide App.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

FOR YOUR OWN SAFETY

Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

Intended use

Observe the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer's service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e. g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a MINI dealer's service center. If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, for instance maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer's service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ MINI Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

DATA MEMORY

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:

- ▷ Operating mode of system components, e.g., fill levels.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, for example wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, for example repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by employees of a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate this technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.

EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

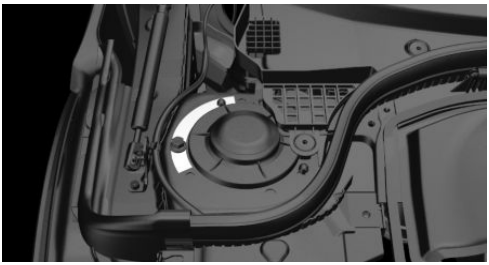
These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e. g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

WATCH ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

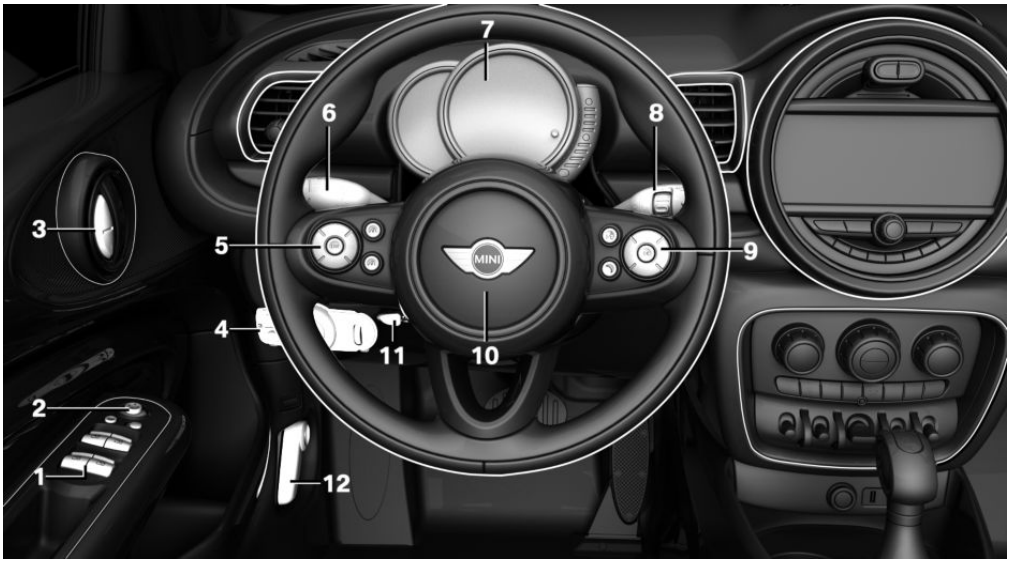
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

COCKPIT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IN THE VICINITY OF THE STEERING WHEEL



1 Power windows 58

2 Exterior mirror operation 69

3 Buttons of the central locking system 48

4 Lights

Front fog lights 115

Rear fog lights 115

Light switch 112

Lights off

Daytime running lights 114

Parking lights 112

Low beams 112

Automatic headlight control 113
Cornering light 114
High-beam Assistant 114
Instrument lighting 116

5 Steering wheel buttons, left

Camera-based cruise control on/off 139

Cruise control on/off 145

SET Cruise control: store speed

RES CNCL Pausing, continuing cruise control

Cruise control: increase speed

Cruise control: reduce speed

Camera-based cruise control: reduce distance

Camera-based cruise control: increase distance

6 Steering column stalk, left

R L Turn signal 84

High beams, headlight flasher 84

High-beam Assistant 114

Roadside parking lights 113

BC Onboard computer 103

7 Instrument cluster 94

8 Steering column stalk, right

Windshield wipers 85

Rain sensor 86

Cleaning windows 86

REAR Rear window wiper 87

Clean the rear window 87

9 Steering wheel buttons, right

Voice activation 27

Telephone

OK Confirm the selection 103

Move selection up 103

Move selection down 103

Increase volume

Reduce volume

10 Horn, entire surface

11 Adjust the steering wheel 71

12 Unlock hood 221

IN THE VICINITY OF THE CENTER CONSOLE

1 Hazard warning system 242

Intelligent Safety 127

2 Control Display 18

3 Radio/Multimedia

4 Glove compartment 172

5 Climate control 157

6 PDC Park Distance Control 147

Rearview camera 150

Parking assistant 153

Auto Start/Stop function 80

Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 78

DSC Dynamic Stability Control 135

Head-up Display 108

7 Steptronic transmission selector lever 89

Manual transmission selector lever 89

8 Controller with buttons 19

9 Parking brake 82

10 MINI Driving Modes switch 137

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

IN THE VICINITY OF THE ROOFLINER

1	SOS	Emergency Request	4		Ambient light 116
2	PASS AIR BAG OFF	Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 121	5		Panoramic glass sunroof 60
3		Reading lights 116	6		Interior lights 116

ONBOARD MONITOR

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CONCEPT

The onboard monitor combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

OPERATION

Overview

1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons and touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.

Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are restored.

Switching on

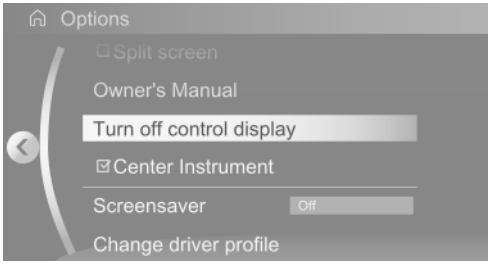
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.

Switching off

1. OPTION Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

2. "Turn off control display"



Controller

General information

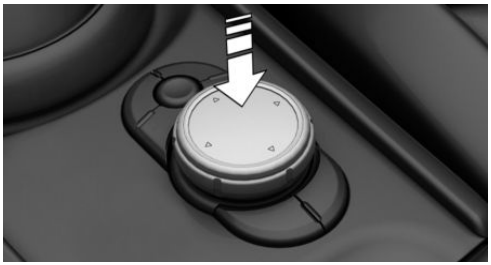
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller, refer to page 23:

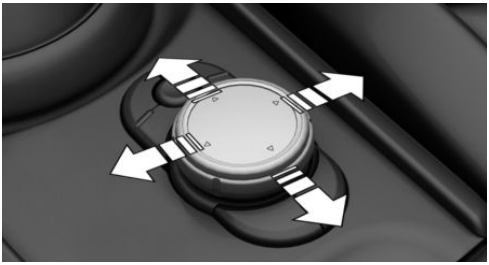
Operation

▷ Turn.

▷ Press.



▷ Move in four directions.



Buttons on the controller

Button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu.
MENU	Press twice: open recently used menus.
COM	Open the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Open the Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Open destination input menu for navigation.
MAP	Open navigation map.
BACK	Open the previous display.
OPTION	Open the Options menu.

OPERATING WITH THE CONTROLLER

Opening the main menu

MENU Press button.

The main menu is displayed.

All onboard monitor functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for instance "System settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, for instance "System settings", a new panel is displayed.

▷ Move the controller to the left.

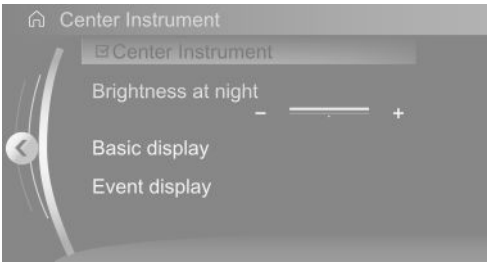
Closes current panel and shows previous display.

▷ BACK Press button.

The previous display opens.

▷ Move the controller to the right.

New display is opened.



The arrow indicates that additional panels can be opened.

Opening recently used menus

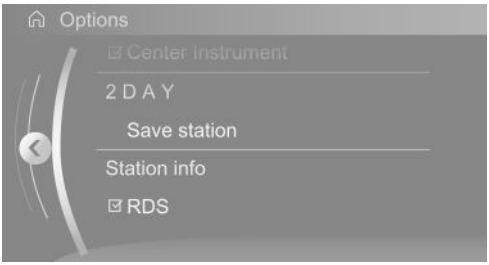
The recently used menus can be displayed.

MENU Press button twice.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



The Options menu consists of various areas:

▷ Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".

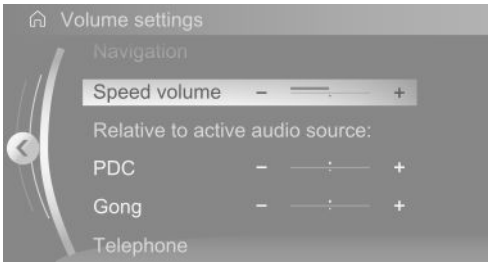
▷ Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Media/Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Save station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a check-box. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered via the controller.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Input

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the controller: delete letters or number.
I← or ABC	Hold the controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Without navigation system

@A Aa a@ Select the symbol.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.

▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available on the Control Display.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which there is an entry are displayed at the left edge.

1. Turn the controller to the left or right quickly.

   All letters for which there are entries are displayed on the left edge.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

OPERATING VIA TOUCHSCREEN

General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

Touch screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on symbol.

All onboard monitor functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

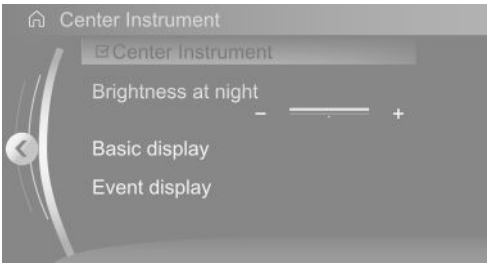
Tap desired menu item.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for instance "System settings".

Changing between panels

After a menu item is selected, a new panel is displayed.



The arrow indicates that additional panels can be opened.

▷ Swipe to the left.

▷ Tap on symbol.

New display is opened.

Opening recently used menus

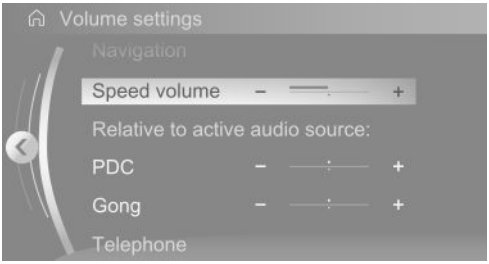
1. Tap on symbol.
2. Tap on symbol.

Changing settings

Settings such as volumes can be changed via the touchscreen.

▷ Slide in the selected field to the right or left, until the desired setting is displayed.

▷ **–** , **+** Tap on symbol.



Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is acti-

vated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller or the touchscreen.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
I←	Tapping the symbol: delete the letter or number.
I←	Tapping and holding the symbol for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
ABC or abc	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Operating navigation map

The navigation map can be moved with the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Rotate map.	Move two fingers in a circle.

TOUCHPAD

General information

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

Selecting functions

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired function.
   - ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": using the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. To make entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 21.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, swipe to the left on the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a blank space, swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.

▷ To enter a hyphen, swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.

▷ To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

SPLIT SCREEN

General information

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, for instance information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when switching to another menu.

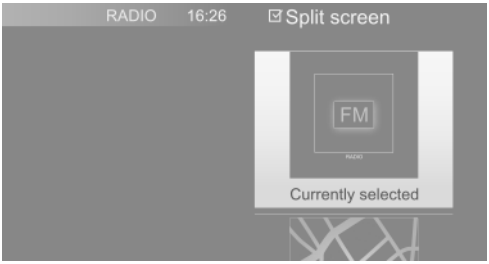
Switching the split screen on/off

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

The display can be selected in menus, where the split screen is supported.

1. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the controller.



3. Select the desired setting.

Specifying the number of displays

It is possible to specify the number of displays.

1. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the controller.
3. "Personalize menu"
4. Select the desired setting.
5. Move the controller to the left.

STATUS INFORMATION

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Status field symbols

Radio

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
♡	Satellite radio is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network. Symbol flashes: network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	Roaming is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are loaded.

Entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	Music collection.
	AUX-IN port.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.
	iPod.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	The sound output has been switched off.
	Encrypted connection not active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.

PROGRAMMABLE MEMORY BUTTONS

General information

The onboard monitor functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Saving a function

1. Select the function via the onboard monitor.
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Running a function

1...6 Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for instance that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

THE CONCEPT

- ▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

REQUIREMENTS

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

To set the language, refer to page 30.

USING THE VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the onboard monitor.

Terminating the voice activation system

Press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

POSSIBLE COMMANDS

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

Commands from other menus can also be spoken.

You may select list entries such as phone list entries via voice activation. Read these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the respective list.

Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the top area of the Control Display:

- ▷ Some possible commands for the current menu.
- ▷ Some possible commands from other menus.
- ▷ Status of the voice recognition.

▷ Encrypted connection is not available.

Help on the voice activation system

▷ To have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud: ›General information on voice control‹.

▷ To have help for the current menu read out loud: ›Help‹.

EXAMPLE: OPENING THE TONE SETTINGS

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output, if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

SETTINGS

Setting the voice dialog

You can set the system to use standard dialog or a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speech mode:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Selecting the input language

For some languages, the input language can be selected.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating voice recognition via the server

The voice recognition feature via the server provides a dictation function and a natural method of entering destinations while improving the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Server speech recognition"

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or talking.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

- The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

GENERAL SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

LANGUAGE

Setting the language

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 28.

TIME

Setting the time zone

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time zone:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the controller.
7. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the time format

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

DATE

Setting the date

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the controller.
7. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the date format

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

SETTING THE UNITS OF MEASUREMENT

You can set the units of measurement for some values, for example, fuel consumption, distances and temperature.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

ACTIVATING/DEACTIVATING POPUP WINDOWS

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

CONTROL DISPLAY

Brightness

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Screensaver

If no entries are made via the onboard monitor, a screensaver can be displayed after an adjustable time.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Screensaver"
6. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

MESSAGES

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- ▷ Service requirements messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

Retrieving messages

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.

The respective menu is opened, where the message is displayed.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages, can be deleted from the list. Check Control messages are displayed as long as they are relevant.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.
3. OPTION Press button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- ▷ Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- ▷ Sort the messages according to date or priority.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

DATA PROTECTION

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers various functions which require data to be transferred to MINI or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some functions.

General information

With data transfer deactivated, the respective function cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Activating/deactivating the data transfer

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My MINI"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted via the onboard monitor.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored Favorites buttons.
- ▷ Travel and onboard computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice notes.
- ▷ Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Via the Central Information Display (CID):

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My MINI"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. "Delete personal data"
6. "Delete personal data"
7. "OK"
8. Exit and lock the vehicle.

After 15 minutes, the deletion process is completed.

If not all of the data was deleted, repeat the deletion.

Canceling deletion

Start the engine to cancel deletion of the data.

CONNECTIONS

Concept

Mobile devices, such as mobile phones or laptops, can be connected and used in the vehicle in various ways.

General information

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

The following functions are possible:

Connection type	Function
Mobile phone via Bluetooth.	Making calls. Office functions.
Audio player/smartphone via Bluetooth or USB port.	Playing music.

Connection type	Function
Smartphone via USB port	Playing videos.
Smartphone via Bluetooth or USB port.	Using apps.
USB memory device via USB port.	Exporting and importing driver profiles. Performing software updates. Exporting and importing stored trips. Playing music.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

Displaying the device list

All devices paired and/or connected with the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth® audio"
	"Apps"

Bluetooth connection

Compatible devices

General information

Details on which mobile phones and mobile devices with a Bluetooth interface are supported can be obtained at www.miniusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

The vehicle identification number and software part number are needed to determine which devices are supported. The software version of the mobile phone may also be required.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

A software update, refer to page 37, can be performed, if needed.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, refer to page 34.
- ▷ The device is ready for operation.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated on the device and in the vehicle, refer to page 35.
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-settings may be required on the device, for instance visibility, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

▷ A number with at least four and a maximum of 16 digits should be defined as the Bluetooth passkey. Required for one-time pairing only.

Activating Bluetooth

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, the following functions must be activated prior to pairing.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select desired setting:
   ▷ "Office"

   Activate function to transmit short messages, e-mails, calendars, tasks, notes, and reminders to the vehicle. Costs can be incurred by transmitting all data to the vehicle.

   ▷ "Contact images"

   Activate function to show the contact pictures.
6. Move the controller to the left.

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select the functions for which the device is to be used:
   ▷ "Telephone"
   ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"
   ▷ "Apps"

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity of the mobile device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile device display.

   Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.
7. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.
   ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

   Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.

   ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via the onboard monitor.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

If connection was not successful: Frequently Asked Questions, refer to page 38.

USB connection

General information

Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

- ▷ Mobile phones supported by the USB interface.
- ▷ Audio devices with USB port, for instance MP3 player.
- ▷ USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

Information about compatible USB media can be found at www.miniusa.com/bluetooth.

The following applications are possible:

- ▷ Exporting and importing driver profiles, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Playing music files via USB audio.
- ▷ Playing videos via USB video.
- ▷ Loading of software updates, refer to page 37.

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- ▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
- ▷ Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- ▷ Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- ▷ Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- ▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- ▷ A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this. At higher temperatures, the USB storage device may cause a reduction in the charging current.
- ▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
- ▷ Depending on how the USB storage device should be used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- ▷ USB hard drives.
- ▷ USB hubs.
- ▷ USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
- ▷ HFS-formatted USB media.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lights.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB storage device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB interface, refer to page 170.

The USB storage device is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list.

Additional functions

Following the initial pairing

- ▷ The device is connected with the vehicle within a short period of time if the engine is running or ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The data stored on the SIM card or in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle after recognition.
- ▷ For some devices, certain settings may be necessary, for instance authorization, see owner's manual of the device.
- ▷ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when the ignition is switched on.

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the desired device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected.

Connecting a specific device

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Connect device"

The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If the device is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Disconnecting the device

The connection of the device to the vehicle is disconnected.

The device remains paired and can be connected again, refer to page 37.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Disconnect device"

Deleting the device

The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Delete device"

Swapping the telephone and additional phone

If two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, the functions of the phone and additional phone can be switched.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

Software update

General information

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, for instance mobile phones and MP3 players. Software updates are available for many of the supported devices. The vehicle is maintained up-to-date via regular vehicle software updates.

Updates and related current information is available on the Internet at www.mini.com/update.

Displaying the installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"

3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has been carried out before, select the desired version to display additional information.

Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. Store the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB flash drive.
2. Connect the USB data storage to a USB interface.
3. "My MINI"
4. "System settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"
9. "OK"
10. Wait for the update to complete.
11. Confirm system restart.

Restoring the software version

The software version before the last software update and the version before the first software update can be restored.

The software may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Restore software"
5. ▷ "Previous version"

   The previous software version is restored.

   ▷ "Default software settings"

   The first software version is restored.
6. "Remove software"
7. "OK"
8. Wait for restore.
9. Confirm system restart.

Frequently asked questions

Information on compatible mobile phones, refer to page 34.

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

Delete connections with other devices, if needed.

▷ Delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list on the mobile phone prior to connecting.

Start new device search.

▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

Charge the mobile phone in the snap-in adapter, wireless charging tray or via the charging cable.

▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one mobile phone can be connected to the vehicle.

Unpair the connected mobile phone from the vehicle and pair and connect only one mobile phone.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

- ▷ Possibly too high or too low ambient temperatures for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why are no telephone functions available?

- ▷ The mobile phone may not be properly configured, for instance as Bluetooth audio device.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone or additional phone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.
- ▷ Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- ▷ A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone or additional phone function.

Why is the phone connection quality poor?

- ▷ The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.
- ▷ Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the area of the center console.
- ▷ Insert mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- ▷ Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. It can be displayed on the Control Display.

Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

General information

The Integrated owner's manual consists of four parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

Search by images

Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

Videos

The basic functions of selected systems are explained in the videos.

Select components

1. MENU Press button.
2. "My MINI"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired setting.

Scrolling through the owner's manual

Turn the controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help - operating instructions for the currently selected function

General information

The relevant information can be displayed directly.

Opening via onboard monitor

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the operating instructions

To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. BACK Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The Owner's Manual can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via the on-board monitor:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Animations"
2. 1...6 Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Executing

1...6 Press button.

The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.

HANDLE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

OPENING AND CLOSING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

REMOTE CONTROL

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replacing the battery, refer to page 46.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 55.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 52.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 229.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◂

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

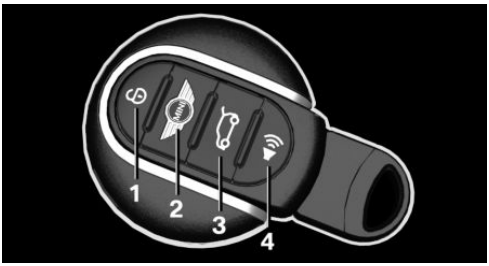
WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Open split doors
4 Panic mode

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 55, the following access points are unlocked.

- ▷ Driver's door and fuel filler flap.

  Press the button of the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.
- ▷ All doors, the split doors, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- ▷ The settings saved in the driver profile, refer to page 52, are applied.
- ▷ The interior lights, courtesy lights and the MINI logo projection are activated.

  These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.
- ▷ The welcome lights are switched on, if this function was activated.
- ▷ Automatically folded in exterior mirrors are folded open. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 55.
- ▷ The alarm system, refer to page 56, is switched off.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press button on the remote control.

All doors, the split doors, and the fuel filler flap are locked.

The alarm system, refer to page 56, is switched on.

If the engine or ignition is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Switch on interior lights and courtesy light

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The MINI logo projection is also switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lights were switched off manually.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

If the button is pressed within 10 seconds of when the vehicle was locked Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 57, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Split Doors

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 55.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the split doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the

split doors is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The split doors swivel back and to the side when they open. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◀

Opening

1. Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

   The right side of the split doors opens.

2. Press button on the remote control again for approx. 1 second.

   The left side of the split doors opens.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

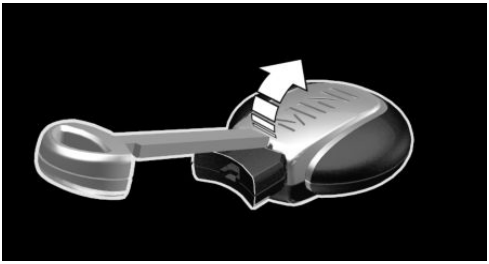
Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

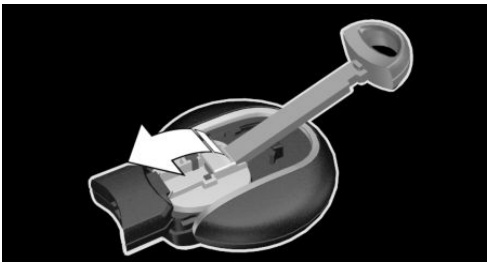
Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 48.
2. Slide the integrated key into the opening and raise the cover.

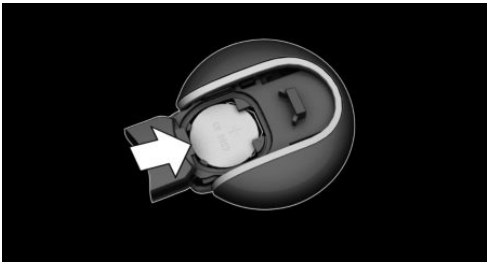
   The battery compartment is accessible.



3. Slide the integrated key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.



4. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



5. Insert a type CR 2032 battery with the positive side facing up.
6. Insert lid and cover.
7. Push the integrated key into the remote control until it engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of the remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 46.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 47.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control

1. Hold the remote control as shown against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

INTEGRATED KEY

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

Safety information

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

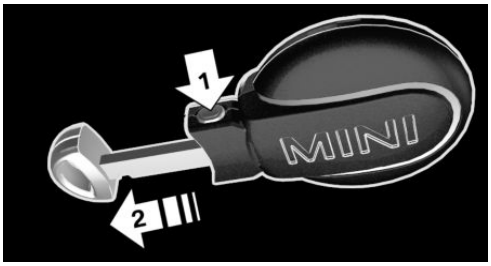
Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

NOTE

The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or key can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Re-

move the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◀

Removing



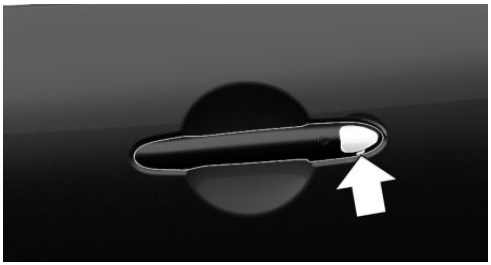
Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock

Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

1. Remove lid on the door lock.

   To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and remove the lid.



2. Unlock or lock door lock.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock. In order to stop this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 47.

BUTTONS FOR THE CENTRAL LOCKING SYSTEM

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Buttons for the central locking system.

Locking

Press the button with the front doors closed.

▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

▷ The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking

Press button.

Opening

▷ Press button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.

- ▷ Front doors: pull the door handle on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- ▷ Back doors: pull twice on the door handle on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

COMFORT ACCESS

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the vehicle's interior.

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

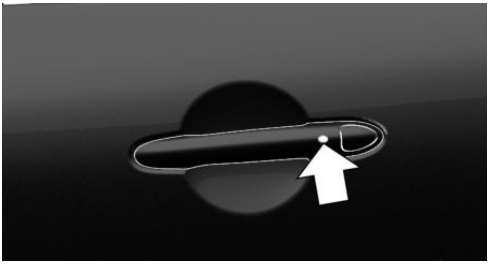
- ▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle.
- ▷ Convenient closing.
- ▷ Opening split doors.
- ▷ Open split doors with no-touch activation.

  This function is not available in vehicles with a trailer hitch.

Functional requirements

- ▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- ▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

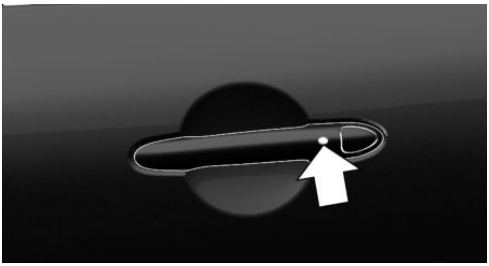
Unlocking



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 🔓

Lock



On the driver's or front passenger's door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: MINI

To save battery power, ensure that all power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.

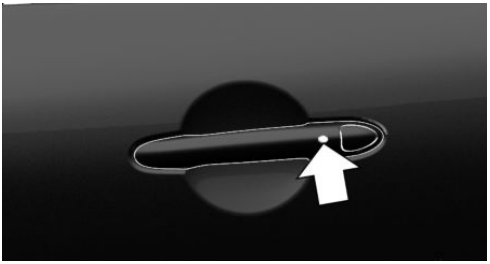
Convenient closing

Safety information

⚠ WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

Closing



Press and hold down the handle of the driver or the front seat passenger.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the remote control button:

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof will be closed.

Open split doors

General information

If the split doors are opened via Comfort Access, locked doors are not unlocked.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the split doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◄

NOTE

The split doors swivel back and to the side when they open. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◄

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◄

Opening

First press button in right-hand handle, arrow 1, then press button in left-hand handle, arrow 2.

Opening the split doors with no-touch activation

Concept

The split doors can be opened with no-touch activation using the remote control you are carrying. Two sensors detect a forward-directed foot motion in the center of the area at the rear of the vehicle and the split doors open.

This function is not available in vehicles with trailer hitch.

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

If the remote control is in the sensor area, the split doors can be opened or closed inadvertently by an unconscious or alleged recognized foot movement.

The sensor has an approximate range of 5 ft/1.50 m extending from the rear of the vehicle.

If the split doors are opened with no-touch activation, locked doors are not unlocked.

Safety information

WARNING

During no-touch activation, vehicle parts may be touched, e.g., hot exhaust system. There is a risk of injury. When moving your foot, make sure you have a firm stance and do not touch the vehicle.◀

WARNING

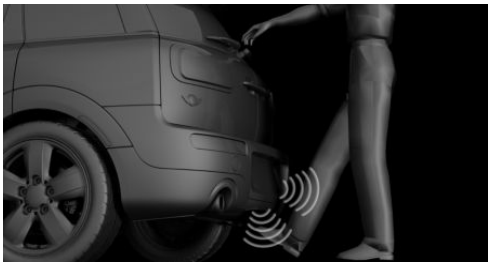
Body parts can be jammed when operating the split doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The split doors swivel back and to the side when they open. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◀

Performing the foot movement

1. Stand in the middle behind the vehicle at about an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. Wave a foot under the vehicle in the direction of travel and immediately pull it back. With this movement, the leg must pass through the ranges of both sensors.



Opening

1. Perform the foot movement described earlier.

   The right side of the split doors opens.
2. After complete opening of the right side, make a second foot movement in order to open the left side of the split doors.

Before the opening, the hazard warning system flashes.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 46.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 47.

SPLIT DOORS

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when un-

locking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 55.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the split doors. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

The split doors swivel back and to the side when they open. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the split doors is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Sharp-edged or pointed objects can hit the rear window and heat conductors while driving. There is a risk of property damage. Cover the edges and ensure that pointed objects do not hit the rear window.◂

Opening from the outside

▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Use the button in the handle to completely open first the right side, arrow 1, and then the left side of the split doors, arrow 2.

▷ Press and hold button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 45.

The right side of the split doors opens.

Press and hold the button on the remote control again for approx. 1 second.

The left side of the split doors opens.

Opening from the inside

With Steptronic transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area.

If the vehicle is locked, selector lever position P must be engaged first.

With manual transmission:

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area twice in quick succession.

The right split door opens. Press button again to open the left split door as well.

Closing

To close the split doors, first press the left side, then the right side.

DRIVER PROFILE

Concept

In the driver profiles, individual settings for several drivers can be stored and called up again when required.

General information

There are three driver profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these driver profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal driver profile will be

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

activated. All settings stored in the driver profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the driver profile currently activated.

If another driver profile is selected via the onboard monitor, the settings saved in it will be applied automatically. The new driver profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control: it can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Functional requirements

For the system to be able to identify the driver profile associated to a particular driver, the detected remote control must be clearly allocated to the driver.

This is the case when:

- ▷ The driver is only carrying his or her own remote control.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
- ▷ The driver gets into the vehicle through the driver's door.

Settings

The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Head-up Display.
- ▷ MINI Driving Modes.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

Profile management

Selecting a driver profile

Regardless of the remote control in use, a different driver profile may be activated. This allows you to call up personal vehicle settings if you did not unlock the vehicle with your own remote control.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

- ▷ All settings stored in the called-up driver profile are automatically applied.
- ▷ The called-up driver profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.
- ▷ If the driver profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this driver profile will apply to both remote controls.

Using a guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are stored in none of the three personal driver profiles.

This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own driver profile.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"

3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Renaming a driver profile

A personal name can be assigned to the active driver profile to avoid confusion between the driver profiles.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.
4. "Change driver profile name"
5. Enter profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Resetting a driver profile

The settings of the active driver profile are reset to their factory settings.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
3. Select driver profile.
4. "Reset driver profile"
5. "OK"

Exporting driver profiles

Most settings of the active driver profile can be exported.

This can be helpful for saving and retrieving personal settings, for instance before delivering the vehicle to a workshop. The saved driver profiles can be taken into another vehicle.

Export is made via the USB port to a USB storage device.

Popular file systems for USB media are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
4. "Export driver profile (USB)"

   Select USB storage device as needed.

Importing driver profiles

Profiles stored on a USB storage device can be imported via the USB interface.

The existing settings of the active driver profile are overwritten with the settings of the imported driver profile.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select the driver profile to be overwritten.

   The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
4. "Import driver profile (USB)"

   Select USB storage device as needed.
5. Select the driver profile to be imported.

Displaying driver profiles during start

The driver profiles can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Show driver profiles at startup"

System limits

A clear assignment between the remote control and driver may not be possible in the following cases, for example.

- ▷ The passenger unlocks the vehicle with his or her own remote control, but another person is driving.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.
- ▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- ▷ Multiple remote controls are located outside of the vehicle.

SETTINGS

General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile, refer to page 52, currently used.

Unlocking

Doors

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Driver's door" or "All doors"
5. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"

     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "All doors"

     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Split doors

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Split Rear Doors" or "Split Rear Doors and door(s)"
5. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Split Rear Doors"

     Only the split doors are opened.
   - ▷ "Split Rear Doors and door(s)"

     The split doors are opened and the doors unlocked.

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

Automatic locking

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Automatic unlocking

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Unlock at end of trip"

After the engine is switched off by pressing the Start/Stop button, the locked vehicle is automatically unlocked.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.

Adjusting the last seat and mirror position

When the vehicle is unlocked, the driver's seat and exterior mirrors resume their last set positions.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   The setting can be made for the driver profile marked with this symbol.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

ALARM SYSTEM

General information

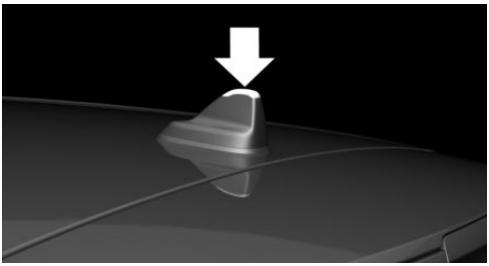
When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Unauthorized opening of a door, the hood or the split doors.
- ▷ Movements in the vehicle interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.
- ▷ Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

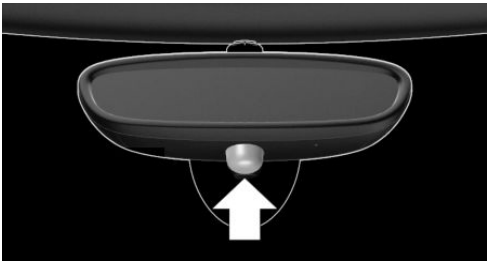
The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▷ By acoustic alarm.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

Overview



Indicator light in the roof fin.



Indicator light on the interior mirror.

Switching on and off

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched on and off at the same time.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 58.

Opening the split doors with the alarm system switched on

The split doors can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the split doors are closed, they are locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Signals of the indicator lights

- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or split doors are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may trigger the alarm even though no one is trying to gain unauthorized access.

Possible situations for an unintended alarm:

- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

For such situations, the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 47.
- ▷ With Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock the vehicle using the button on the driver's side or passenger side door.

POWER WINDOWS

General information

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the windows are automatically closed except a gap.

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview

Opening

- ▷ Press the button to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.

- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 45.

Closing

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.

- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling the switch again stops the motion.

Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 49.

Pinch protection system

General information

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection . If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection .

Safety switch

General information

The opening and closing of the rear window can be blocked via the safety switch for the rear. This makes sense, e.g., if children or animals are carried in the rear.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the safety function is switched off automatically.

Overview

Switching on and off

Press button.

The LED lights up if the safety function is switched on.

Malfunction

General information

In certain situations a window can only be operated to a limited extent.

- ▷ After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the a window can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case.
- ▷ The power window motors are equipped with overheating protection. If a window is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, the overheating protection switches the motor off temporarily. Depending on the degree of overheating, it may only be possible to close the window or it may not be possible to operate it at all.

  In this case: allow the power window motor to cool down.

Initializing the system

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During initialization, the affected window closes without jam protection .

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◂

1. Open the affected window completely.
2. Pull the switch to the resistance point and hold.

   The window closes.
3. Continue holding the switch pulled to the resistance point.

   Depending on the equipment, the window opens and closes one or twice after approx. 15 seconds.
4. Release switch.

PANORAMIC GLASS SUNROOF

General information

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the glass sunroof and possibly the electrical sliding visor close automatically.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◂

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◂

Overview

Tilting the glass sunroof

Press back the switch up to or beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is raised.

Opening glass sunroof

When the glass sunroof is closed

Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

▷ Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is opened as long as the switch is pressed.

▷ Press the switch back beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is opened.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

If the glass sunroof stops before it is completely opened, it is in the Comfort position. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by Pressing the switch.

Closing glass sunroof

With the glass sunroof open

▷ Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

The glass sunroof is closed as long as the switch is pressed and stops in the raised position.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed and stops in the raised position.

Pressing the switch toward the back stops the motion.

▷ Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it twice.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

With the glass sunroof completely raised

Press the switch forward beyond the resistance point and release it.

The glass sunroof is closed.

Pinch protection system

General information

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a glass sunroof closes, the closing action is interrupted.

The glass sunroof opens slightly.

Closing without the jam protection system

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection . Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing after a power interruption

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case. MINI recommends having this work performed only by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SETTINGS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SITTING SAFELY

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Additionally, observe the following chapters for safe driving:

- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 65.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 66.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 118.

FRONT SEATS

Safety information

WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◀

WARNING

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◀

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

Manually adjustable seats

Overview

1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Height
4 Backrest tilt

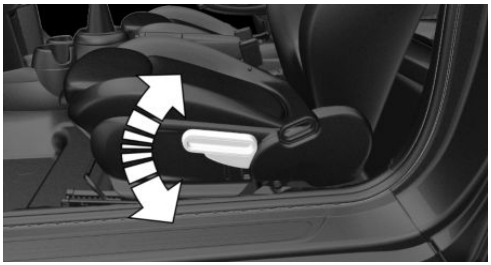
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Forward/backward

Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

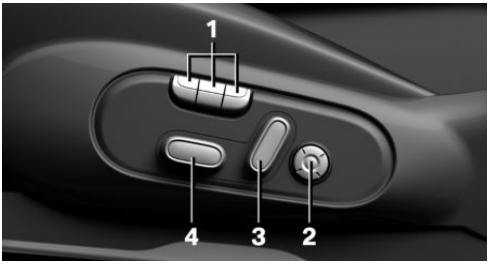
Turn the wheel in order to increase or decrease the curvature.

Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 56, is activated for this purpose.

Overview

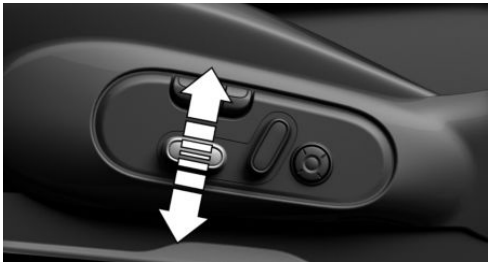


1 Seat and mirror memory
2 Lumbar support
3 Backrest tilt
4 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

Forward/backward

Push switch forward or backward.

Height

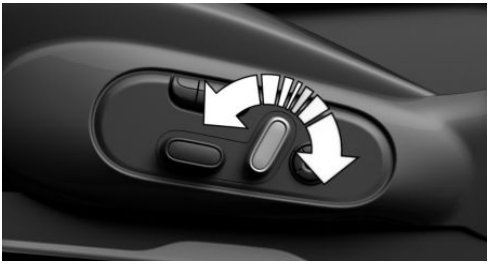


Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt

Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Lumbar support

Concept

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

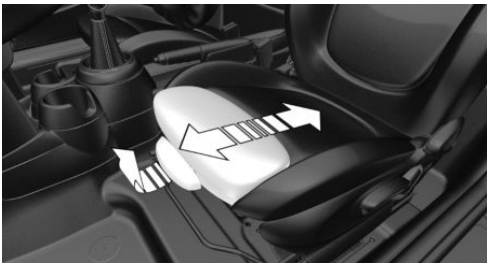
Settings

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the switch:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the switch:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Front seat heating

Overview

Seat heating

Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

When GREEN Mode, refer to page 189, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

SAFETY BELTS

Number of safety belts

The vehicle is fitted with five safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

The two outer safety belt buckles of the rear seat are intended for the persons sitting on the left and right.

The center safety belt buckle of the rear seat is intended for the person sitting in the middle.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off. Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when fastening it.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If the safety belt is used to buckle more than one person, the protective effect of the safety belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ Safety belts are damaged, soiled or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Safety belt buckle is damaged or heavily soiled.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and as tight to your body as possible over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the seat belt

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder is active at speeds above approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Distance

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Adjust the head restraint via the backrest tilt as needed.

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Before driving, install the head restraints on the occupied seats. Ensure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head approximately at eye level.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

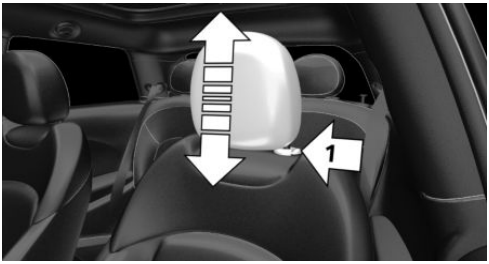
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g., pillows, while driving.◀

Adjusting the height: John Cooper Works sport seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be adjusted.

To adjust the height: basic seat



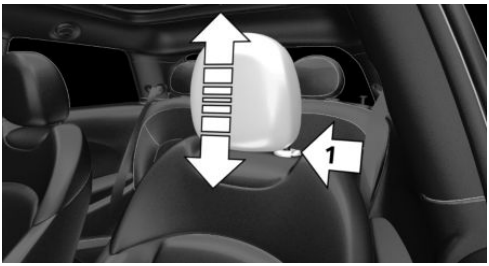
- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

Removing: John Cooper Works sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

To remove: basic seat

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold the seat backrest forward if needed.
2. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Before driving, install the head restraints on the occupied seats. Ensure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head approximately at eye level.◀

WARNING

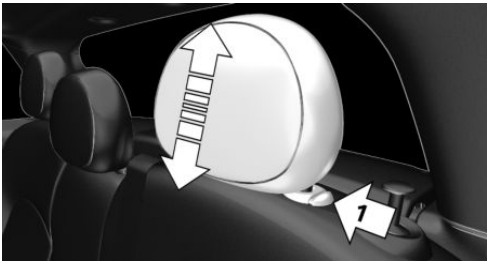
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

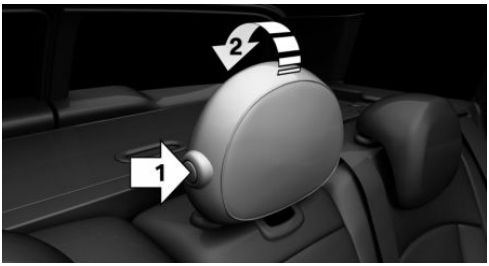
- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g., pillows, while driving.◀

Adjusting the height



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

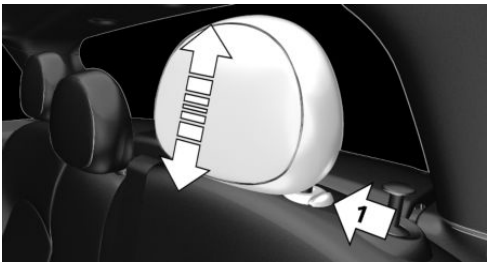
Fold down



- ▷ To fold down: press the button, arrow 1, and press down the head restraint, arrow 2.
- ▷ To fold up: pull up head restraints.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Fold down the rear seat backrest, refer to page 178, in question.

2. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

SEAT AND MIRROR MEMORY

Concept

Two different driver's seat and exterior mirror positions can be stored per driver profile, refer to page 52, and retrieved.

General information

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored.

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.◀

Overview

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. SET Press button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press selected button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

The stored position is called up automatically.

Press selected button 1 or 2.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat or one of the memory buttons is pressed.

While driving, the seat position adjustment on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, calling up stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

▷ Open or close the door or split doors.

▷ Press a button on the remote control.

▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

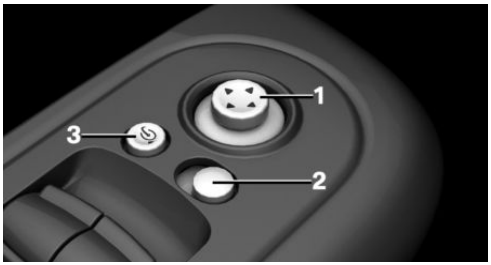
The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 56, is activated for this purpose.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, e.g., while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◀

Overview



1 Settings 70

2 Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor

3 Folding in and out 70

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

Press button.

The mirror moves in accordance with the button movement.

Saving positions

The current exterior mirror position can be stored via the seat and mirror memory, refer to page 69.

Adjusting manually

In case of an electrical malfunction, press the edges of the mirror.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◀

Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Fold the mirrors in and out is advantageous in the following situations:

- ▷ In vehicle washes.
- ▷ On narrow roads.
- ▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror, refer to page 71, are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

The concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

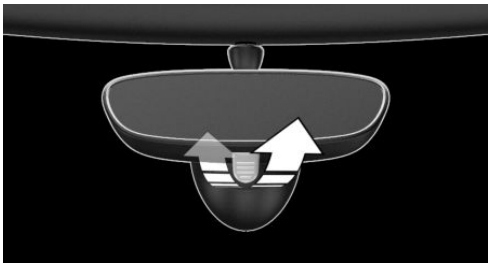
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable

Flip lever



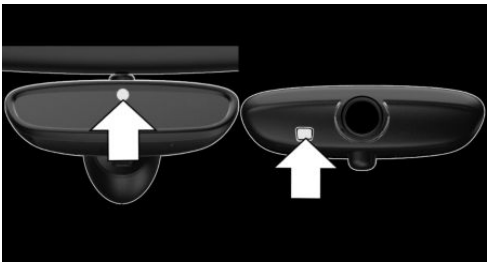
To reduce the blinding effect of the interior rear view mirror, flip the lever forward.

Turn knob

Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Overview



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

STEERING WHEEL

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◀

Adjusting

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Fold the lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
4. Fold the lever back.
5. Switch off the ignition again if needed.

TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

Safety information

WARNING

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.◀

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 120.

Safety information

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◂

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◂

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

General information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

In order to faciliate the installation of a back-facing child restraint system in the rear:

Move the front passenger's seat as far up as possible before folding down the backrest.

Safety information

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◂

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◂

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 120.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the safety belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT FIXING SYSTEM

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◀

Position

The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint system with a tether strap

Safety information

NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

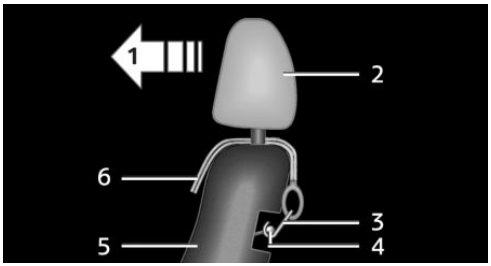
Mounting points

The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraint

3 Hook for upper retaining strap

4 Mounting point

5 Seat backrest

6 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise the head restraint, if needed.
2. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.
3. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor on the rear seat.
4. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.

WARNING

In case of an accident, people sitting in the back can come into contact with the tightened retaining strap of the child restraint system on the front passenger seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. With a mounted child restraint system, do not carry any people on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.◀

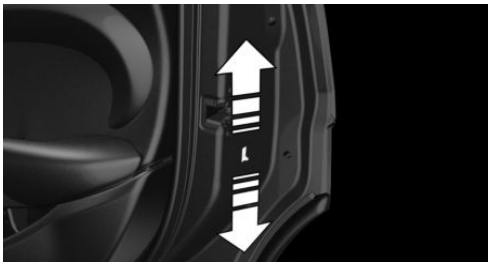
WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, e.g., braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

LOCKING THE DOORS AND WINDOWS

Doors



Push the locking lever on the rear doors up.

The door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for the rear

Press button on the driver's door if children are being transported in the rear.

This locks various functions so that they cannot be operated from the rear: safety switch, refer to page 59.

DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

START/STOP BUTTON

The concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition off

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
- ▷ When the front doors are opened if there is no other person sitting in the front seats.
- ▷ The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

Radio ready state

General information

In the radio-ready state, certain power consumers remain ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Activating

With the engine running, press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine is not running and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically activates the radio-ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are activated.

The radio-ready state remains active if, for instance the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

Switching off automatically

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

STARTING THE ENGINE

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

Steptronic transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Manual transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

ENGINE STOP

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Before driving into a car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 249.

Steptronic transmission

Switching off the engine

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Engage selector lever position P.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 82. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph/5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 137, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.

Engine stop

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Manual transmission:

- ▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
- ▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage lever in position P. The engine remains off.

To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ External temperature too low.
- ▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- ▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- ▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- ▷ After driving in reverse.
- ▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- ▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- ▷ At higher elevations.
- ▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
- ▷ The parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- ▷ Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- ▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- ▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
- Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
- The vehicle begins rolling.
- Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is very low.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for example, if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Switching the system on/off

Using the button

Press button.

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, as it is detected that no driver is present.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

PARKING BRAKE

The concept

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview

Parking brake

Setting

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED lights up.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up red. The parking brake is set.

Depending on the stopping situation, the parking brake is engaged automatically.

Steptronic transmission: in some parking situations, the parking brake is automatically engaged, when selector lever position P is engaged. In these cases, the parking brake is released automatically when you leave the selector lever position P.

While driving

To use as emergency brake while driving:

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is being pulled.

PARK (P) The indicator light lights up red, a signal sounds and the brake lights light up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

If the vehicle is decelerated to a complete stop, the parking brake is engaged.

Releasing

Releasing manually

With the ignition switched on:

Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is pressed.

Steptronic transmission: press the switch while the brake is pressed or selector lever position P is set.

The LED and indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

Automatic release in cars with Steptronic transmission

For automatic release, step on the accelerator pedal.

The LED and indicator lamp go out.

The parking brake is automatically released when you step on the accelerator:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Drive mode engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.

Automatic release in cars with manual transmission

Drive off as usual. The parking brake disengages when the clutch pedal is released.

The LED and indicator light go out.

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically released:

- ▷ Engine on.
- ▷ Gear engaged.
- ▷ Driver buckled in and doors closed.
- ▷ Engine power is sufficient to drive off.

Malfunction

In the event of a failure or malfunction of the parking brake, secure the vehicle against rolling using a wheel chock, for example, when leaving it.

After a power failure

Putting the parking brake into operation

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set.

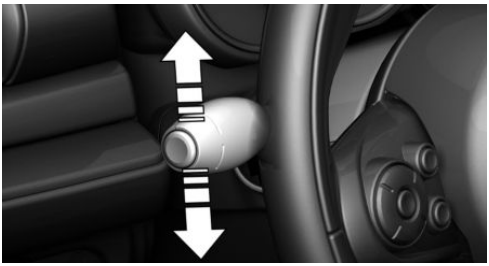
It may take several seconds for the brake to be put into operation. Any sounds associated with this are normal.

PARK (P) The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation.

TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

Turn signal

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

The lever returns into its starting position after actuation.

To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The triple turn signal duration can be adjusted.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.

- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

WIPER SYSTEM

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Switching on

Tap up the lever or press it past the resistance point.

- ▷ Normal wiper speed: tap up once.

  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.

  Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Switching off and brief wipe

Press the lever down.

- ▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.
- ▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
- ▷ Single wipe: press down once.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

NOTE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

Activating/deactivating

Press button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever lights up.

If wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

During trip interruption with the rain sensor switched on: if the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes, the rain sensor is automatically activated again.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield washer system

Safety information

WARNING

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀

NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Cleaning

Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

Rear window wiper

Switching on the rear window wiper

Turn the switch from idle position 0 upward, arrow 1: interval mode. When reverse gear is engaged, the system switches to continuous operation.

Clean the rear window

In interval mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch automatically returns to its interval position when released.

In idle position: turn switch downward, arrow 3. The switch automatically returns to its idle position when released.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The fold-out position enables the wipers to be folded away from the windshield.

General information

Helpful when changing the wiper blades or under frosty conditions, e.g.

Safety information

WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

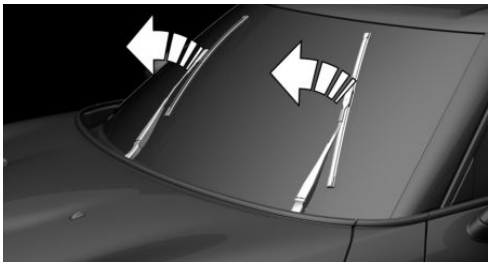
NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wipers remain in a nearly vertical position

3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

WASHER FLUID

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◀

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

NOTE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.◀

NOTE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents can damage the washing system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents. Observe the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.◀

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.◀

Shifting

General information

The engine speed during shifting is adjusted automatically for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION

Concept

The Steptronic transmission combines the functions of an automatic transmission with the possibility of manual shifting, if needed.

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Selector lever positions

Drive mode D

Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

Reverse R

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Neutral N

The vehicle may be pushed or roll without engine power in selector lever position N, for instance in vehicle washes.

Parking position P

Selector level position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a drive mode, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift block will not be deactivated and the shift command will not be executed.

Releasing the selector lever lock

A lock prevents the inadvertent switching to selector lever position R or the inadvertent change from selector lever position P.

To release the lock: with the brake pedal depressed, press the button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Sport program M/S

Concept

The shifting points and shifting times in the Sport program are designed for a sportier driving style. The transmission, for instance shifts up later and the shifting times are shorter.

Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Ending the Sport program

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual mode M/S

Concept

Manual gear-shifting is possible in manual mode.

Activating manual mode

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D, arrow 1. Next, push the selector lever forward or pull it backward, arrow 2.

Manual mode M/S becomes active and the gear is changed.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for instance M1.

Shifting

To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

The Steptronic transmission continues shifting automatically in certain situations, for instance when certain engine speed limits are reached.

Avoiding automatic upshifting

Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.

With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddles. This is not possible by switching briefly via the shift paddles from selector lever position D to manual mode M/S.

Ending the manual mode

Push the selector lever to the right.

D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission

Concept

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for instance downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

Switching into manual mode

In selector lever position S, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode permanently.

In selector lever position D, actuating a shift paddle switches into manual mode temporarily.

Switching into automatic mode

In selector lever position D, after conservative driving in manual mode without acceleration or

shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.

It is possible to switch from manual mode into the automatic mode as follow:

- ▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
- ▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

Shifting

- ▷ To shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
- ▷ To shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
- ▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddle.

The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.

Displays in the instrument cluster

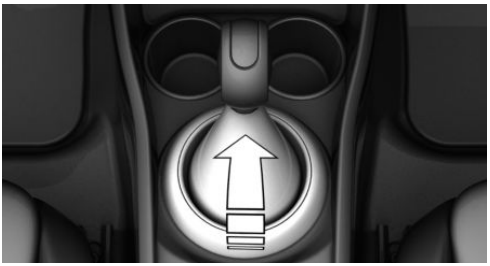
The selector lever position is displayed, for example P.

Manually release the transmission lock

If the selector lever is locked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being turned on, the brake pedal being depressed and the button on the selector lever being pressed, the transmission lock can be unlocked manually:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the selector lever sleeve together with the lower retaining ring and, if required, the MINI Driving Modes switch from the center console. To do so, pull the retaining ring and, if required, the MINI Driving Modes switch upward at the rear edge.



2. Lift the sleeve. Unplug the cable connector, if needed.
3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231, press the yellow release lever downward, see arrow.

4. Move the selector lever slightly toward the rear; to do this press the button on the front of the selector lever.

   Release the release lever.
5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

For additional information, see the chapter on tow-starting and towing.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 184, period.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Start with launch control

While the engine is running:

1.

Press button and select SPORT with the MINI Driving Modes switch.

   The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator light lights up.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.
5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control was used, the transmission must cool down for approx. 5 minutes, before Launch Control can be used again.

After using Launch Control

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC Dynamic Stability Control again.

System limits

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

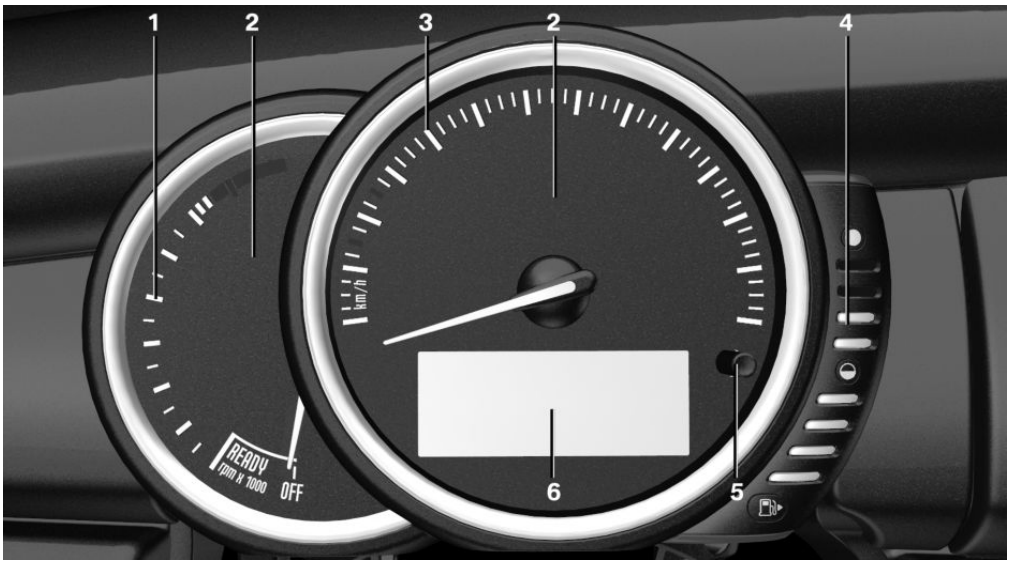
DISPLAYS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

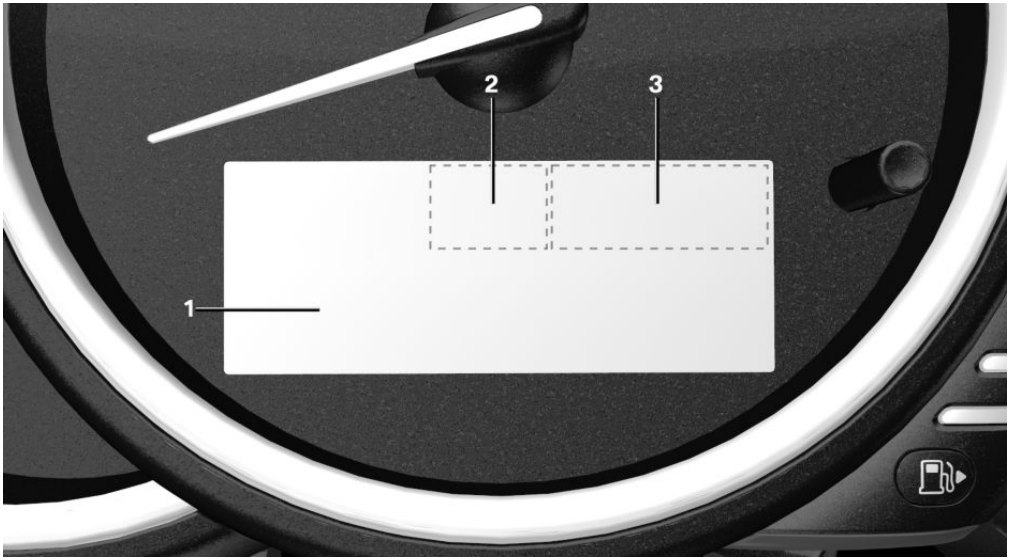
Overview



1 Tachometer 99
2 Indicator/warning lights
3 Speedometer
4 Fuel gauge 99
5 Display/reset miles 99
6 Electronic displays 95

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Electronic displays



1 Driver assistance systems
Messages, for instance Check Control
Time 100
External temperature 99
Selection lists 103
Total miles/trip odometer 99
Onboard computer 103

2 Selector lever position 89
Gear shift indicator 101

3 MINI Driving Modes switch status 137

CHECK CONTROL

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and SMS text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a SMS text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lights

General information

The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Indicator lamp flashes or illuminates: safety belt on the driver or front passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

PARK (P)

The parking brake is set.

Release the parking brake, refer to page 83.

Brake system

Braking system impaired. Continue to drive moderately.

BRAKE

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Approach control warning

Indicator light illuminates: advance warning is issued, for example when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Indicator light flashes: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Pedestrian warning

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

Orange lights

Active Cruise Control

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead.

Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 139.

Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control

Indicator lamp illuminates: a vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator lamp flashes: the conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

(ABS)

Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

ABS

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 135.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or DTC Dynamic Traction Control is activated.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 135, and DTC Dynamic Traction Control, refer to page 136.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 125.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator light illuminates.

The Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire.

Observe the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and then illuminates continuously.

No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 121.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the steering system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- ▷ The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 230.

Rear fog light

Rear fog lights are activated.

Rear fog lights, refer to page 115.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Turn signal, refer to page 84.

Parking lights, headlight

Parking lights or headlights are activated.

Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 112.

Front fog lights

Front fog lights are activated.

Front fog lights, refer to page 115.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 114.

Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Blue lights

High beams

High beams are activated.

High beams, refer to page 85.

Hiding Check Control messages

Press and hold button on signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the SMS text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Further help

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the desired text message.
5. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Owner's Manual"

     Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.
   - ▷ "Service request"

     Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
   - ▷ "MINI Roadside Assistance"

     Contact Roadside Assistance.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

FUEL GAUGE

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Notes on refueling, refer to page 198.

When the reserve fuel level is reached, the yellow indicator lamp is illuminated.

TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

Concept

The total number of kilometers driven and the number of kilometers driven since the last reset are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Reset the trip odometer

Press the knob.

- ▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE

WARNING

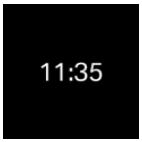
Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, e.g., on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.◀

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

TIME



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The time can be set via the onboard monitor.

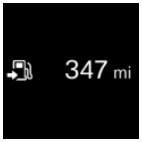
DATE

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The date can be set via the onboard monitor.

RANGE

Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, for instance taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

Displaying the cruising range

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Range"

CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION

Concept

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Current consumption"

SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

Concept

The function displays the necessary service requirements and the corresponding maintenance procedures.

General information

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.

   The entered date is stored.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

The concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

Depending on the vehicle's features and country-specific version, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual transmission: displaying

Example	Description
3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

Steptronic transmission: displaying

Example	Description
M3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▸4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

SPEED LIMIT INFO

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

General information

The camera at the base of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc., are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as from the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

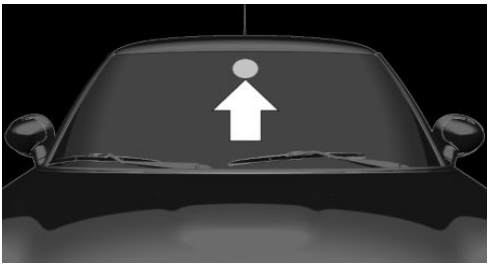
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior mirror clean and clear.

Display

Speed limit detection is displayed via the onboard computer.

Press button on the turn signal lever several times, if needed.

Speed limit detection is displayed on the CID (central information display) in the instrument cluster.

Speed Limit Info

The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

With navigation system: speed limit detection is not available.

Without navigation system: no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed Limit Info can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
- ▷ When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- ▷ If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ When signs are detected valid for a parallel road.

SELECTION LISTS

General information

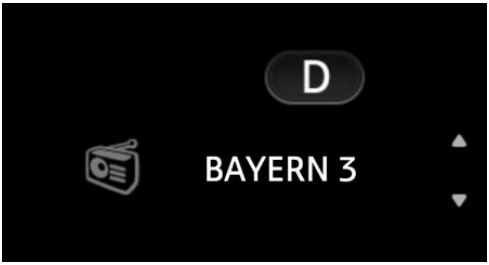
With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redial phone feature.
- ▷ Turn on voice activation system.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

Button the steering wheel	Function
⇧ ⇩	Activate the respective list and select the desired settings.
OK	Confirm the selection.

Display



ONBOARD COMPUTER

Concept

The onboard computer displays different vehicle data in the instrument cluster, such as average values.

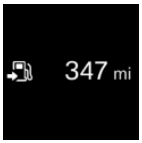
Calling up information on the CID (central information display)

Press and hold button on signal lever.

Information is displayed in the CID (central information display) of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

CID (central information display)



Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the CID (central information display):

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ GREEN Info.

  When GREEN Mode is activated.
- ▷ Average fuel consumption.
- ▷ Current fuel consumption.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

  Time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Speed Limit Info.
- ▷ Speed.

The unit of some information can be changed.

Setting units, refer to page 31.

Selecting information

You can select what information from the onboard computer is to be displayed on the CID (central information display) of the instrument cluster.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired information.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

GREEN info

The achieved range extension may be displayed as a bonus range.

Average fuel consumption

This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the onboard computer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values

Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.

When the engine temperature is too high, a red indicator lamp is displayed.

When the engine oil temperature is too high, a red indicator lamp is displayed.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 227.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: distance to destination

The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: time of arrival

The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed Limit Info

Further information, see chapter Speed Limit Info.

Onboard computer on the Control Display

Concept

The onboard computer displays different vehicle data on the Control Display, such as average values.

General information

Two types of onboard computers are available on the Control Display:

- ▷ "Onboard info": average values, such as the fuel consumption, are displayed. The values can be reset individually.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values deliver an overview of a certain distance and can be reset as often as necessary.

Calling up the onboard computer or trip computer

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the onboard computer

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info"

4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

Resetting the trip computer

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. Move the controller to the left, if needed.
   - ▷ "Reset": all values are reset.
   - ▷ "Automatic reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

DRIVING EXCITEMENT

Concept

On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle state can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

Sport instruments

On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

Displaying sport instruments

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"
4. "Sports instruments"

Via MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Sport displays"
3. "Sports instruments"

Vehicle state

The following vehicle and surrounding area data is automatically checked and evaluated in succession:

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Engine temperature.
- ▷ External temperature.
- ▷ SPORT program state.

Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

Checking vehicle state

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"
4. "Vehicle and surroundings"

Via the MINI Driving Modes switch:

1. Activate SPORT.
2. "Sport displays"
3. "Vehicle and surroundings"

SPEED WARNING

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the controller.

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the controller.

LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

The concept

The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

Basic displays

Basic functions, for example the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

Event displays

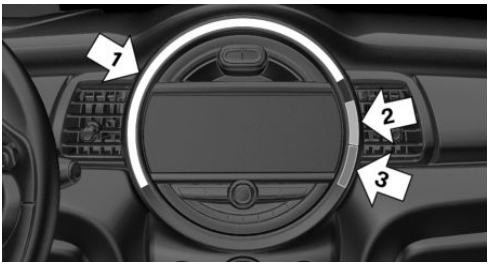
Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for example the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.

Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

Example: tachometer

Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer's basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning margins.

Display



▷ Arrow 1: current RPM.

▷ Arrow 2: prewarning field.

▷ Arrow 3: warning field.

Switching on/off LED ring

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Center Instrument"

Adjusting the LED ring

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"

3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Basic display" or "Event display"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Center Instrument"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

Concept

This system projects important information into the driver's field of vision, for instance the speed.

The driver can get information without averting his or her eyes from the road.

General information

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display. For additional information, see the chapter on care.

Safety information

WARNING

When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury.

Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display, attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.◀

Overview

Switching on/off

When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.

Press button.

Display

Overview

The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Selecting displays in the Head-up Display

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Displayed information"
6. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the brightness

The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.

The basic setting can be adjusted.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 116.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Adjusting the height

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Height"
6. Turn the controller until the desired height is reached.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the rotation

The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Rotation"
6. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display visibility

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain sitting positions.

- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- ▷ Wet roads.
- ▷ Unfavorable light conditions.

John Cooper Works: sport displays in the Head-up Display

General information

The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

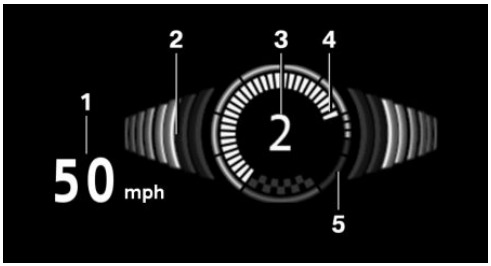
Switching on

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Displayed information"
6. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

Display



1 Speed
2 Shift point indicator
3 Gear display
4 Current engine speed
5 Warning field, speed

Shift point indicator

Concept

Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Steptronic transmission:

  Manual mode M/S and, if necessary, Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.
- ▷ Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

Switching on

Shift point indicators are displayed in the Head-up if the sport displays, refer to page 110,are switched on.

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-Up Display"
5. "Displayed information"
6. "Sport displays"

Display

Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming shift moment.

Shift up immediately when the red fields light up.

When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.

When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

VEHICLE STATUS

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

- "Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 126.
- "Tire Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 122.
- Resetting the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 122.
- "Engine oil level": Electronic engine oil level check, refer to page 223.
- "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be displayed on the Control Display. Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 98.
- "Service required": Displaying service requirements, refer to page 100.

LIGHTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

OVERVIEW

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog lights
	Front fog lights
	Automatic headlight control
0	Lights off Daytime running lights
	Parking lights
	Low beams
	Instrument lighting

PARKING LIGHTS, LOW BEAMS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

The exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings if the driver's door is opened when the ignition is switched off.

Parking lights

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamp, refer to page 113.

Low beams

Position of switch:

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

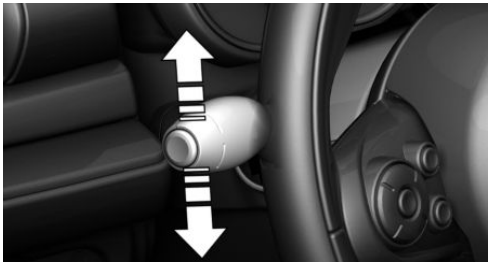
Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Roadside parking lights

Concept

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on



With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off

Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

WELCOME LIGHTS AND HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY FEATURE

Welcome lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, when switching off the vehicle, switch position or .

Depending on the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly, when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Welcome lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information

The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the vehicle's radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Set length of time.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

AUTOMATIC HEADLIGHT CONTROL

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for instance in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

CORNERING LIGHT

General information

Position of switch:

When going around corners, the cornering light also lights the interior area of the curve. Below a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h when the turn signal is switched on and the steering angle is detected, there is automatic activation.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

Cornering light is malfunctioning or has failed. Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SELF-LEVELING HEADLIGHTS

The self-leveling headlights compensate for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

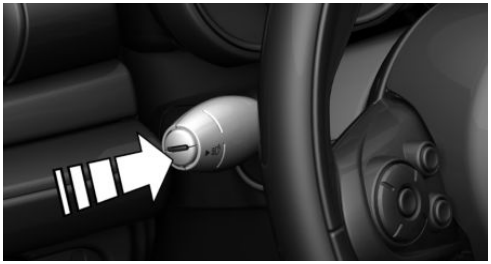
General information

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off at any time as usual.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Activating/deactivating



1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position ≣A or ≣D .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 85.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- ▷ In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- ▷ In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

FOG LIGHTS

Front fog lights

Functional requirement

The low beams must be switched on.

Switching on/off

Press button. The green indicator light lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 113, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

Rear fog lights

Functional requirement

The low beams or front fog lights must be switched on.

Switching on/off

Press button. The yellow indicator light lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 113, is activated, the low beams will

come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog lights.

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING

Settings

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

INTERIOR LIGHTS

General information

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, and courtesy lights are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1 Interior lights

2 Reading lights

3 Ambient light

Switching interior lights on/off manually

Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Switch back on: press button.

Switching the reading lights on and off manually

Press button.

Reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

Activating/deactivating

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Changing color

Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.

Push and hold the switch forward or back: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

Setting the brightness

Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

Via the onboard monitor:

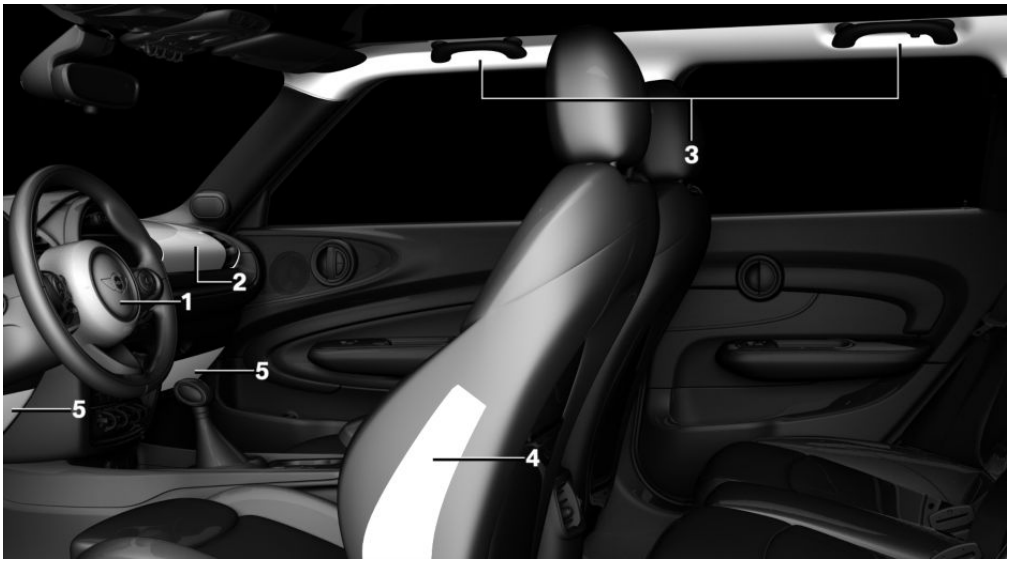
1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Adjust the brightness.

SAFETY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

AIRBAGS



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on optimum protective effect of the airbag system.◀

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- ▷ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; therefore, contact MINI Customer Relations or your authorized MINI service center.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.◂

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

The concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◂

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The light indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator light lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ The indicator light does not light up when, for instance a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR TPM

The concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if

there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure.

General information

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 202.

Functional requirements

The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire pressure loss is not assured.

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, for instance whether or not the TPM is active.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the tires and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One wheel is yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.

All wheels are yellow

A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

Wheels, gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire due to a malfunction.

Status information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Resetting the system

Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The tires are shown in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures." is displayed.

The progress of the reset is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Messages

Required tire inflation pressure check message

A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

Message in case of low tire pressure

The yellow warning lamp lights up.

A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ There is a tire inflation pressure loss.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Reduce your speed and drive moderately. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, e.g., gas station, check and correct the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

Message in case of sharp tire inflation pressure loss

The yellow warning lamp lights up.

A symbol with the affected tires will be displayed in the Check Control message.

▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

▷ No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

In these cases:

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 211, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

Check the air pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, for instance with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

Use of sealant, for instance from the tire repair kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, for instance it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs, potholes, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a runflat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM electronics, for example an emergency wheel, is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

The concept

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

It detects a tire inflation pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Status display

The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, for instance whether or not the FTM is active.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. RESET "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire

The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

   Run-flat tires, refer to page 211, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is equipped with normal tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.◀

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

System limits

A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

Normal tires

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the air pressure in all four tires, e.g. using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g. with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:

The possible driving range varies depending on the how the vehicle is loaded and used, e.g., speed, road conditions, external temperature. The driving range may be less but may also be more if an economical driving style is used.

If the vehicle is loaded with an average weight and used under favorable conditions, its possible driving range will be up to 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, for instance it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, for instance curbs, potholes, etc.

WARNING

Your vehicle handles differently with a runflat with no or low inflation pressure; for instance, your lane stability when braking is reduced, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is a risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◂

Final tire failure

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

INTELLIGENT SAFETY

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.

- ▷ Approach control warning with City light braking function, refer to page 128.
- ▷ Pedestrian warning with Approach control, refer to page 131.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Switching on/off

Some Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure. Some Intelligent Safety systems activate according to the last setting.

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

▷ The LED goes out.

CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION WARNING WITH APPROACH CONTROL

The concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled via a camera in the base of the mirror.

The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

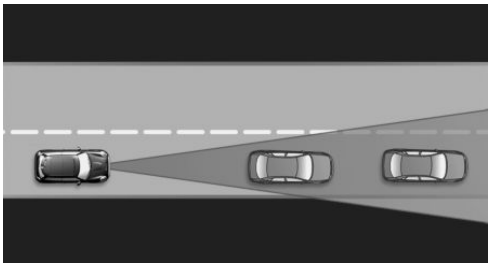
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Detection range



Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

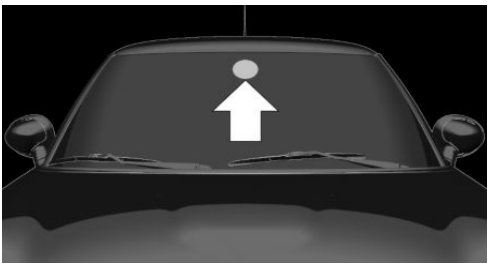
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

▷ The LED goes out.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via the onboard monitor.

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Warning time"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected warning time is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Warning with braking function

Display

A warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display if a collision with a detected vehicle is imminent.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Prewarning

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning in displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◂

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

PEDESTRIAN WARNING WITH APPROACH CONTROL

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.

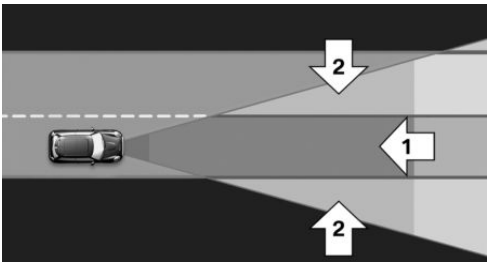
A camera at the base of the rearview mirror controls the system.

General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.

▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

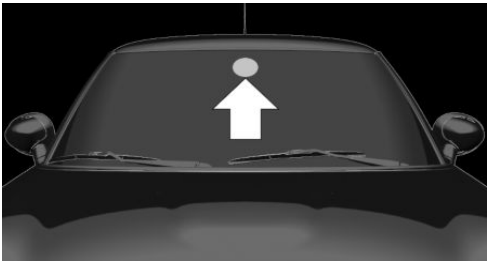
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. The individual settings are stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are switched off.

▷ The LED goes out.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◂

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 inches/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

Concept

The additional brake lamps tell following traffic that an emergency braking procedure is being performed. This helps to reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information

- During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.
- During heavy brake application, the flashers additionally light up.

POST CRASH — IBRAKE

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Depressing the accelerator pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

Concept

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.

Harder vehicle braking

It can be necessary to bring the vehicle in certain situations to a halt quicker.

Here, a higher braking pressure must be generated for a short period when pressing the brake pedal than during automatic braking. This interrupts automatic braking.

Interrupting automatic braking

It can be necessary to interrupt automatic braking in certain situations, e.g., for an evasive maneuver.

Interrupt automatic braking:

- By pressing the brake pedal.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

DRIVING STABILITY CONTROL SYSTEMS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information

Dynamic Stability Control detect for example the following unstable driving conditions:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheel, which can lead to understeering.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 136, is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g., with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

DSC is switched off.

Activating DSC

Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

Automatic activation

When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:

- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL

The concept

DTC is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions, for example unplowed snowy roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited vehicle stability.

When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Therefore drive with appropriate caution.

You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control

Activating DTC

Press button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC

Press button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

PERFORMANCE CONTROL

Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

To increase maneuverability, wheels are braked individually when a sporty driving style is used.

ALL4

ALL4 is the all-wheel-drive system of your vehicle. Concerted action by ALL4 and DSC further optimize traction and driving dynamics. The ALL4 all-wheel-drive system variably distributes the driving forces to the front and rear axles as demanded by the driving situation and road surface.

DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

Concept

The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

The system offers several different programs.

The programs are selected via the MINI Driving Modes switch.

Programs

MID/GREEN

Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

SPORT

Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

MINI DRIVING MODES SWITCH

Concept

The MINI Driving Modes switch helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs. The MINI Driving Modes switch will activate the particular program.

Operating the programs

MINI Driving Modes switch	Program
	MID GREEN SPORT

MID

For balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

GREEN

Concept

GREEN, refer to page 189, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

Activating GREEN

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the right until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure GREEN"
5. Select the desired setting.

This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

SPORT

Concept

Consistently sporty tuning of the drivetrain for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the left until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure SPORT"
5. Select the desired setting.

This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

Configuring driving program

Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:

▷ GREEN, refer to page 137.

▷ SPORT, refer to page 138.

Displays

Program selection

With the MINI Driving Modes switch turned on a list of programs is displayed and can be selected.

Selected program

The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

The concept

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

For vehicles with respective equipment versions, the possible holding duration amounts to 2 minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

DRIVING COMFORT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle within the given system limits so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: if the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a halt, and then proceeds to drive again shortly thereafter, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

General information

A camera on the interior rear view mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, e.g., in the following situations:

- ▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.
- ▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

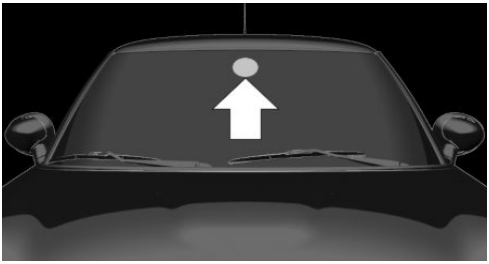
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 140.
SET	Store/maintain speed, refer to page 141.
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 140. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 142.
	Reduce distance, refer to page 142.
	Increase distance, refer to page 142.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 141.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 141.

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle's series, optional features and country specifications.

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: the system can also be activated while the vehicle is stationary.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Manual transmission: Active Cruise Control is interrupted below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h. The system does not brake to a stop.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: when switching off while stationary, depress the brake pedal simultaneously.

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

Press button on the steering wheel.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: when interrupting while stationary, depress the brake pedal simultaneously.

Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ Manual transmission: when the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If selector lever position N is set.
- ▷ When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- ▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
- ▷ If the detection range of the camera is impaired, for instance by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.
- ▷ Manual transmission: if the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.
- ▷ With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: following a longer stationary period after the vehicle was braked to a stop by the system.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the symbol.

DSC will be switched on, if needed.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

⊞ or ⊟ button: hold down to repeat the action.

Adjusting distance

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.◂

Reduce distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Increase distance

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.

Calling up stored speed and distance

RES CNCL Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with the saved values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the CID (central information display).

Switching distance control on/off

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.◂

Switching distance control off

Press and hold this button.

Or:

Press and hold this button.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

To switch distance control back on, press one of the two buttons again briefly.

After changing over distance control, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed

55 In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

- ▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

- ▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you

Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the CID (central information display).

Distance display	
	Distance 1
	Distance 2
	Distance 3
	Distance 4 This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.

Detected vehicle

Symbol lights up orange:

A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions:

Rolling bars: the detected vehicle has driven away.

ACC does not accelerate. To accelerate, activate ACC by briefly stepping on the accelerator pedal or by pressing the RES CNCL button or the ⊞ or ⊟ button.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol flashes orange:

The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.

The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds:

You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

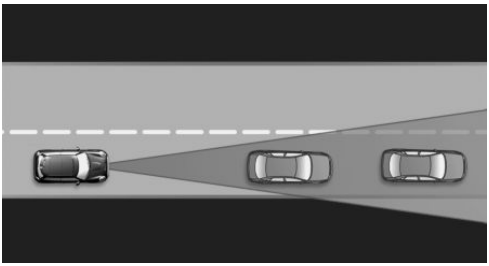
Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

Displays in the Head-up Display

The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits

Detection range



The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

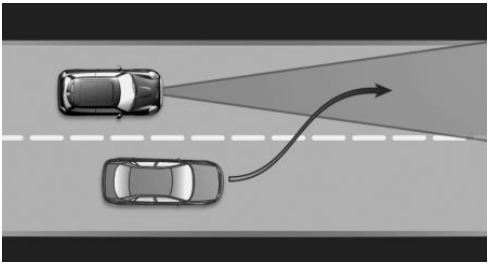
Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system also does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▷ For pedestrians, cyclists or similarly slow-moving road users.
- ▷ For red traffic lights.
- ▷ For cross traffic.
- ▷ For oncoming traffic.
- ▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

Swerving vehicles



A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, for example, when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.

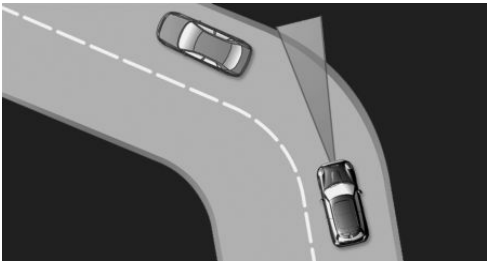
With the Stop&Go function for Steptronic transmissions: driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- ▷ On steep inclines.
- ▷ From bumps in the road.

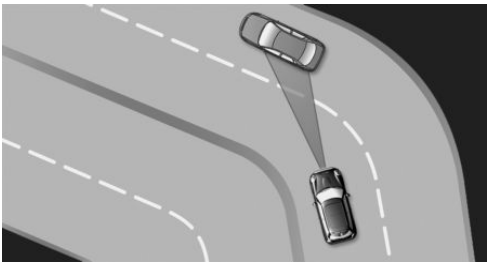
In these cases, press on the accelerator pedal.

Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the gas pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Weather

In the event of unfavorable weather and light conditions, e. g. if there is rain, snowfall, slush, fog or glare, this may result in poorer recognition of vehicles as well as short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already detected. Drive attentively, and react to the current traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for example by braking, steering or evading.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Engine power

The desired speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated.

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ When an object was not correctly detected.
- ▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the front windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CRUISE CONTROL

Concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◀

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Press button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, refer to page 146.
SET	Store speed, refer to page 146.
RES CNCL	Pause cruise control, refer to page 146. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 147.
+	Increase speed, refer to page 146.
–	Reduce speed, refer to page 146.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

Automatic interruption

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
- If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- If selector lever position N is set.
- When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- When DSC is actively controlling stability.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed

Press ⊞ or ⊟ button in the interrupted state.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.

DSC will be switched on, if needed.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

Changing the speed

⊞ or ⊟ button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ⊞ or ⊟ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ⊞ or ⊟ button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed

Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed

The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.

- ▷ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

- ▷ Signal tones.
- ▷ Visual display.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for measuring the distances are located in the bumpers.

The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given in the following situations:

- ▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm from the object.
- ▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the object.
- ▷ When a collision is imminent.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely

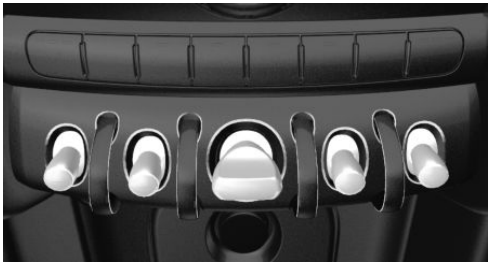
and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active.◀

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle



Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

  The rearview camera also switches on.
- ▷ With front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

With front PDC: automatic activation on obstacle detection can be switched off. Via the on-board monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Parking"
4. "Automatic PDC activation": only with respective equipment.
5. "Automatic PDC activation"

   The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

WARNING

Signal tones

When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E.g., if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are simultaneously located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Tone"
4. "Volume settings"
5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

"Rear view camera"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- If cargo protrudes.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.

- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.
- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

  The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

With front PDC: to reduce false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for instance in vehicle washes; see Switching on/off.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

REARVIEW CAMERA

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

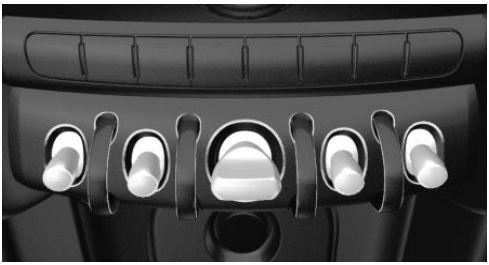
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Camera

The camera lens is located between the license plate lights.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

- On: the LED lights up.
- Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Switching the view via the onboard monitor

With PDC activated:

"Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

- The rearview camera is switched on.
- Split doors are completely closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can lead to malfunctions.

Activating the assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

- Parking aid lines

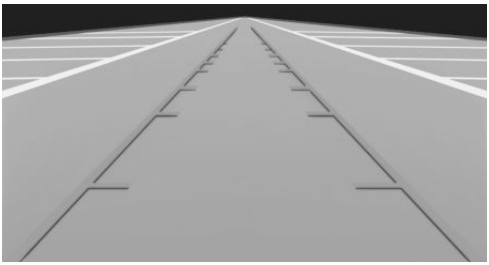
  "Parking aid lines"

  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- Obstacle marking

  "Obstacle marking"

  Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

Pathway lines

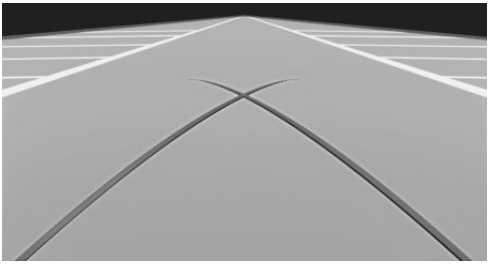


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning circle lines

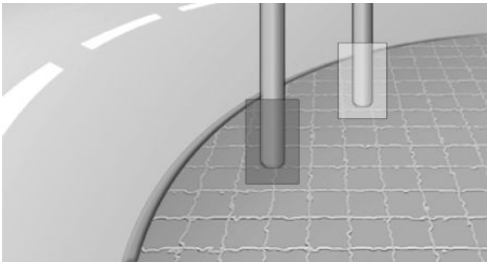


Turning circle lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Obstacle marking

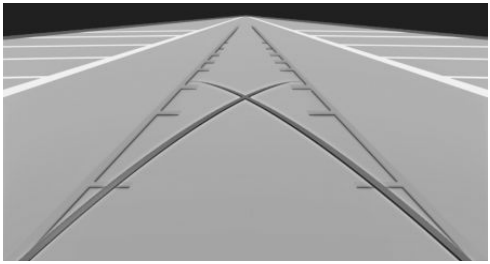


Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

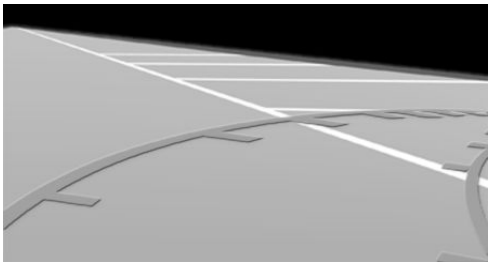
Their colored margins of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



Display settings

Brightness

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ☼ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. ◐ Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.

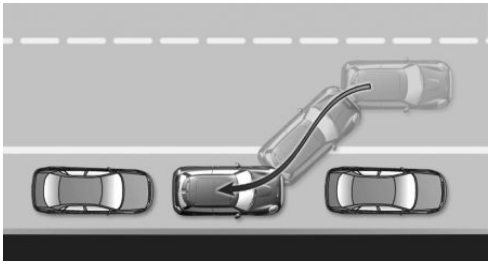
Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.

Follow instructions in the PDC chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

PARKING ASSISTANT

Concept



This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.

General information

Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.

System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.

A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

NOTE

The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of property damage. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.◀

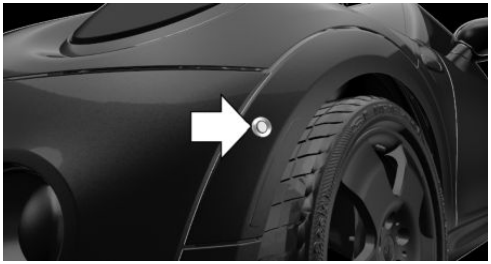
The safety information of the PDC Park Distance Control applies in addition.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Park assistance button

Ultrasound sensors



The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.

Functional requirements

Ultrasound sensors

Ensure full functionality:

- ▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers.
- ▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

For measuring parking spaces

- ▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- ▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
- ▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle's length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

For parking

- ▷ Doors and split doors are closed.
- ▷ The parking brake is released.
- ▷ When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

Switching on and activating

Switching on with the button

Press park assistance button.

The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

Switching on with reverse gear

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

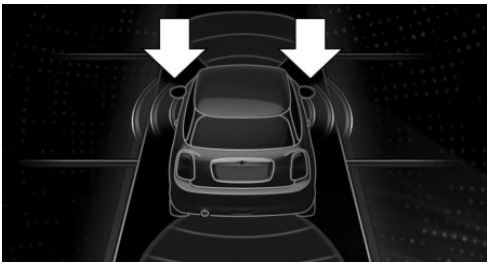
To activate: "Parking Assistant"

Indicator on the Control Display

System activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.
	The system is activated.

Parking space search and system status



- ▷ Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle image; the parking assistant is

activated and the parking space search is active.

▷ Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.

▷ The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

▷ Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

Parking using the parking assistant

Parking

1. Press park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch the parking assistant on, refer to page 154. Activate the parking assistant, if needed.

   Parking assistant is activated.

2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the display, refer to page 154.

3. Follow the instructions on the display.

   The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move.

   The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.

4. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Interrupting manually

The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:

▷ Press park assistance button.

▷ "Parking Assistant"

Interrupting automatically

The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.

▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.

▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.

▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.

▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.

▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.

▷ When switching into other functions of the radio.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Resuming

An interrupted parking procedure can be continued, if needed.

Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 154, and follow the instructions on the display.

Switching off

The system can be switched off as follows:

▷ Press park assistance button.

▷ Switching off the ignition.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

No parking assistance

The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- ▷ In tight curves.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- ▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.
- ▷ With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:

- ▷ For small children and animals.
- ▷ For persons with certain clothing, e.g., coats.
- ▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, e.g., from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- ▷ If cargo protrudes.
- ▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- ▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ Low objects already displayed, e.g., curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.
- ▷ The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

Tire size

The parking position may vary depending on the tire size.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

CLIMATE CONTROL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

AIR CONDITIONER

1 Air distribution settings
2 Air flow
3 Temperature
4 Seat heating, right 65
5 Air conditioning
6 Recirculated-air mode
7 Rear window defroster
8 Windshield defroster
9 Seat heating, left 65

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air volume.

Switching off

Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The system provides heat depending on the desired temperature.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the vehicle's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The vehicle's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 186, that will exit from below the vehicle.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the vehicle's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.

The higher the air flow, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and if needed, use the cooling function.

Windshield defroster

Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

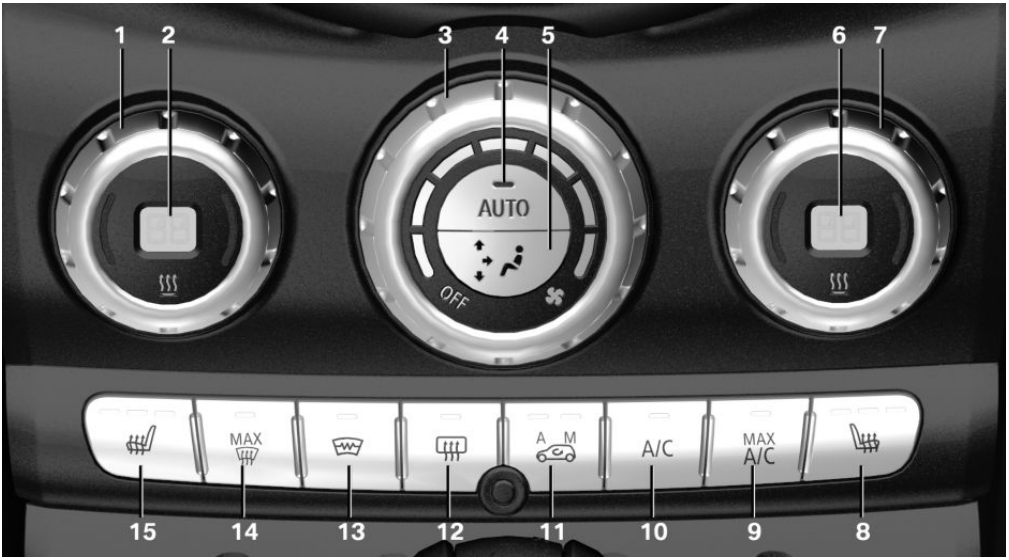
When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 229.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



1 Temperature, left
2 Display
3 Air flow, AUTO intensity
4 AUTO program
5 Air distribution, manual
6 Display
7 Temperature, right
8 Seat heating, right 65
9 Maximum cooling
10 Air conditioning
11 Recirculated-air mode
12 Rear window defroster
13 Windshield defroster
14 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
15 Seat heating, left 65

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Set any air volume.

Switching off

Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

by using the maximum cooling or heating power, and then keeps it constant.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the vehicle's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The vehicle's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 186, develops and drains underneath the vehicle. This is normal.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, maximum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General information

The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 °F/0 °C and with the engine running.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The following features are switched on automatically with the AUTO program:

▷ The cooling function, refer to page 161.

To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity

With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.

Turn the ring to set the desired intensity from soft to intensive.

The set intensity is displayed via the position of the illuminated LED segment.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC detects odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the vehicle's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the vehicle's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Switching on/off

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

Operation

Turn the ring to set the desired air flow.

The manually adjusted air flow is displayed via illuminated LED segments.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows and floor area.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- ▷ Windows and upper body region.
- ▷ Windows.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button.

Windshield defroster

Press button.

The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 229.

VENTILATION

Setting

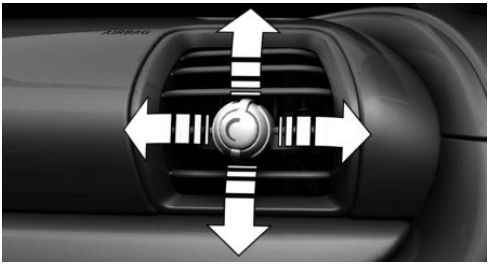
The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

- ▷ Direct ventilation:

  The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.
- ▷ Indirect ventilation:

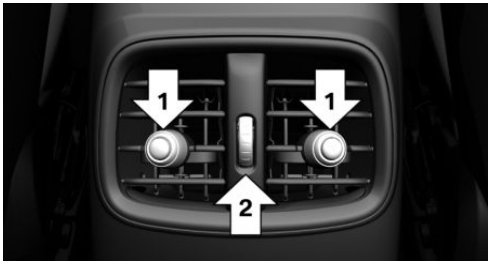
  If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the vehicle's interior.

Front ventilation



- ▷ Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- ▷ Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrows.

Ventilation in the rear



▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.

▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 2.

PARKED-VEHICLE VENTILATION

The concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset activation times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort ventilation now"

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the activation time

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Comfort ventilation"
5. Select the desired activation time.
6. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "For start time at:"

   Activate the desired activation time.

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

UNIVERSAL INTEGRATED REMOTE CONTROL

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems, such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The Universal Integrated Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

Compatibility

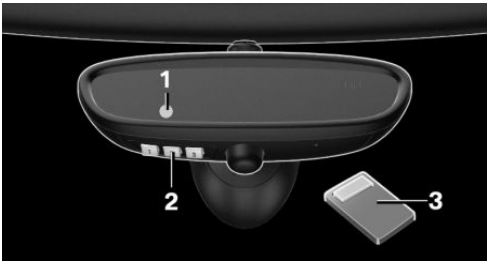
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the Universal Integrated Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Overview



1 LED

2 Programmable keys

3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for ap-

proximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior mirror. The LED on the interior mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior mirror buttons.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Read the system's owner's manual, or press the programmed button on the interior mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features a rolling code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the Universal Integrated Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior mirror.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at most 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming starting with step 4. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Operation

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◂

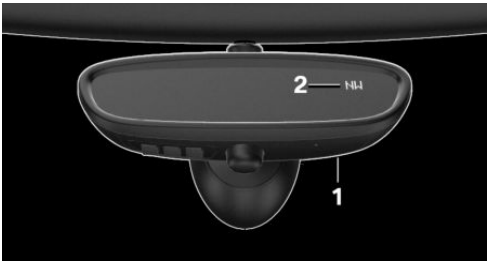
The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

DIGITAL COMPASS

Overview



1 Control button

2 Mirror display

Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

Operating concept

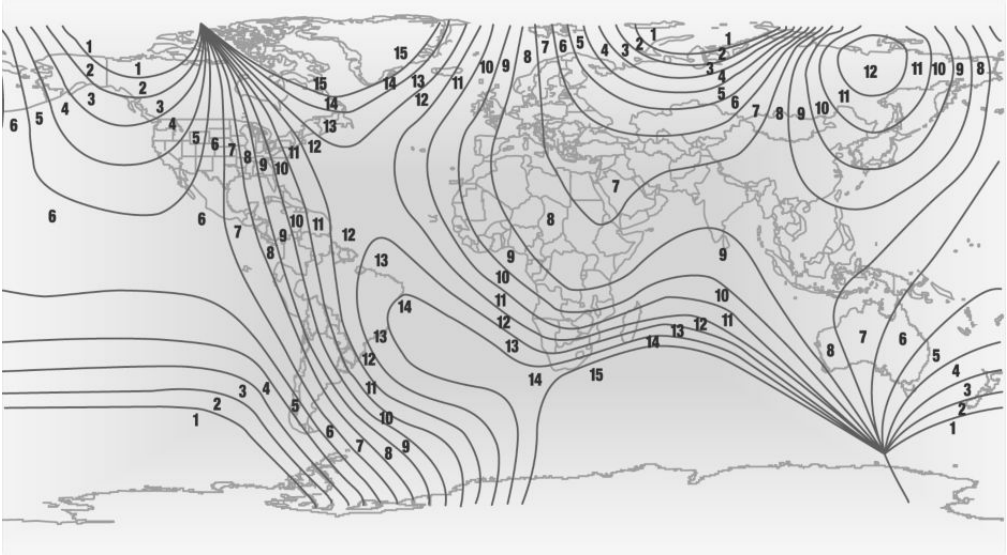
Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

World map with magnetic zones



Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.

▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.

▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

SUN VISOR

Glare shield

To provide protection against glare, fold the sun visor down or pivot it to the side.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

Overview

The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

Ashtray

In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cup holder.

Lighter

WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

Push in the lighter.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

SOCKETS

Concept

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, for example portable navigation devices, etc., can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior when unfolding. There is risk of injuries. make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.◀

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

In the front center console

Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the rear center console

Remove the cover.

In the cargo area

The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

USB INTERFACE/AUX-IN PORT

The concept

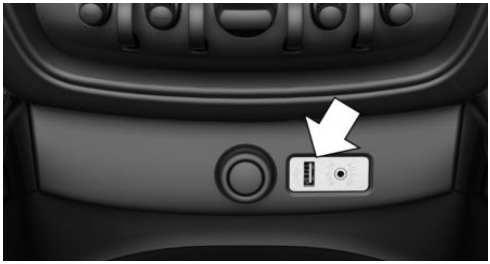
Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

A mobile audio device, e.g. a MP3 player, can be connected using the AUX-IN port.

General information

Observe the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB interface in the section on USB connections, refer to page 35.

In the center console



The USB interface and the AUX-IN port are located at the front in the center armrest.

Under the center armrest

The USB interface is located under the center armrest.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◂

NOTE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.◂

OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.
- ▷ Storage compartment in front of the cup holders.
- ▷ Clothes hooks
- ▷ Storage compartments in the cargo area.
- ▷ Storage tray in the center console.
- ▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Safety information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◂

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold up the cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

DRIVER'S SEAT

There is a storage compartment under the driver's seat.

COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

WARNING

Breakable objects, e.g., glass bottles, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the vehicle's interior. There is a risk of injury. Do not stow any breakable objects in the vehicle's interior.◂

CENTER ARMREST

General information

Two storage compartments are located in the center armrest.

Opening

Upper storage compartment: press button, arrow 1, and fold the center armrest up, arrow 2.

Lower storage compartment: press button, arrow 1, and fold the center armrest up, arrow 2.

CUP HOLDERS

Safety information

WARNING

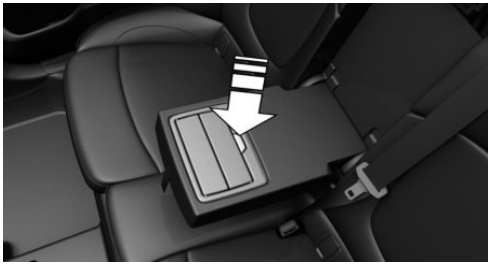
Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◂

Front

In the center console.

Rear

In the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

NOTE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.◀

CLOTHES HOOKS

WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◀

WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◀

the clothes hooks are located above the rear doors.

CARGO AREA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

LOADING

Safety information

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◀

NOTE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

NOTE

The cargo floor panel is designed for a particular maximum weight. Weight that is too high and that is selective can damage the cargo floor panel. There is a risk of property damage. Do not exceed the maximum load of the cargo area floor and evenly distribute the cargo across the cargo area floor.

The maximum load is 881 lbs/440 kg.◀

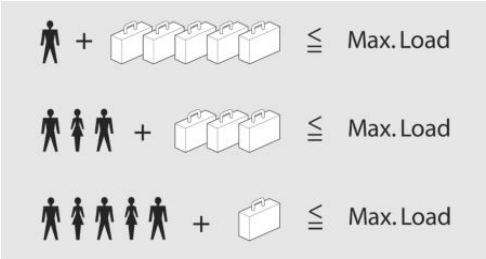
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage

load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Load



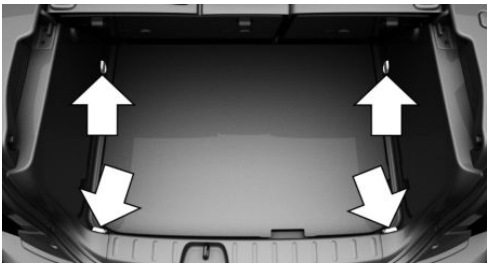
The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

LASHING EYES IN THE CARGO AREA



With storage package: to secure the cargo there are four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, retaining straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

CARGO COVER

Safety information

WARNING

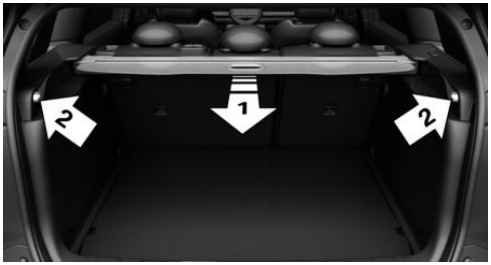
Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◂

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Closing

NOTE

A cargo cover hooked in incorrectly can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Hook the cargo cover on both sides.◂



Pull out the cargo cover, arrow 1, and hook both sides into the brackets, arrow 2.

Opening

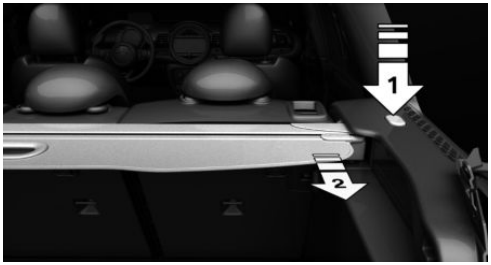
WARNING

A cargo cover that snaps back quickly can jam body parts or cause damage. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not let the cargo cover snap back into place.◂

Pull over the cargo cover and hook into the brackets on both sides.

Removing

For storing bulky objects the cargo cover can be removed.



Press the release button, arrow 1, and pull the cargo cover out towards the rear, arrow 2.

Installing

Slide the cargo cover in until it engages on both sides with an audible click.

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS IN THE CARGO AREA

Side storage compartments, left and right

Storage compartments are located on the left and right sides.

Storage compartments in the split doors

There are storage compartments in the split doors.

Multi-function hook

WARNING

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.◂

A multi-function hook is available on the right side of the cargo area.

ENLARGING THE CARGO AREA

Concept

The cargo area can be enlarged as follows:

- ▷ The rear seat backrests in the rear can be folded down.
- ▷ The rear seat backrests in the rear can be moved into an upright loading position using the cargo setting.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 60 to 40. The left rear seat backrest is connected to the center section.

With through-loading system: the rear seat backrest is divided into three parts at a 40/20/40 ratio. The side rear seat backrests and the center section can be folded down separately.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.◀

WARNING

With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.◀

WARNING

With a rear backrest that is not locked, the protective function of the middle safety belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If you are using the middle safety belt, lock the wider rear backrest.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

Folding down the rear seat backrest from the rear

1. Before the rear seat backrest is folded down, fold in the center head restraint if necessary.
2. Reach into the recess and pull the rear seat backrest forward.

Cargo position

Concept

The rear seat backrests can be moved into an upright loading position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Settings

1. Release the backrest, and tilt it forward.
2. Fold the frame up until it engages.

3. Fold back and engage the rear seat backrest.

Fold down the middle section

1. Fold in the middle head restraint.
2. Reach into the recess and pull the middle section forward.

Fold back the backrest

Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.

VARIABLE CARGO AREA FLOOR

With the variable cargo area floor, the cargo area can be configured corresponding to transport requirements. To do this, remove the cargo area floor, and insert it in the desired position.

Follow instructions on securing cargo, refer to page 175.

Removing the cargo floor panel

1. Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.

2. Grasp the cargo floor panel in the rear and fold slightly upward.

3. Pull the cargo floor panel backward from the brackets.

Proceed in the reverse order to reinstall the cargo area floor.

Fold up the cargo floor panel

WARNING

Improper use of the variable cargo floor panel can lead to a danger of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is risk of injuries and risk of property damage.

▷ Do not use the variable cargo floor panel to separate the cargo area and vehicle interior in the sense of a partition net.

- ▷ Only use the variable cargo floor in the folded-up position when the backrests are folded up and locked.
- ▷ Always secure cargo against shifting, using straps, belts and lashing eyes, for example.◀

Fold the rear part of the cargo floor panel upward.

Fold up the cargo floor panel and press behind the locks on the left and right, arrow. You've reached the maximum cargo height.

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

THINGS TO REMEMBER WHEN DRIVING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BREAKING-IN PERIOD

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 93.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.◀

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing split doors

WARNING

An open split door protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with split doors open.◀

If nevertheless you need to drive with split doors open:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. If possible, in the vehicle's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

NOTE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

When driving through water, observe the following:

- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Braking safely

The vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

Objects in the area around the pedals

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated when braking helps to dry the brake discs and pads and protect them from corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

WARNING

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, e.g., engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.◀

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler, e.g., when driving over curbs or entering into underground vehicle parking garages. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.◀

ROOF-MOUNTED LUGGAGE RACK

General information

Installation only possible with roof rack.

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using ratchet straps.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

DRIVING ON RACETRACKS

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.

SAVING FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The vehicle features advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof-mounted or rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

CLOSE THE WINDOWS AND GLASS SUNROOF

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and raises fuel consumption.

TIRES

General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, for example, tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS

As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with low engine speed and at a constant speed.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page 101.

USE COASTING CONDITIONS

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS

Switch off the engine during longer stops, e.g., at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT

Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI service center.

Also note the MINI maintenance systems, refer to page 229.

GREEN MODE

Concept

GREEN Mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, for instance the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:

Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in the D selector lever position. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to re-

duce fuel consumption. The D selector lever position remains engaged.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster as bonus range.

General information

The system includes the following MINIMALISM functions and MINIMALISM displays:

- ▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 191.
- ▷ GREEN tip, driving instruction, refer to page 191.
- ▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 190.
- ▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 193.
- ▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 192.

Activating GREEN Mode

Turn MINI Driving Modes switch to the right until GREEN Mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via MINI Driving Modes switch

1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Select the desired setting.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure GREEN"
5. Select the desired setting.

Activating/deactivating the functions

The following functions can be activated/deactivated:

- ▷ "GREEN speed warning":
- ▷ "GREEN climate control"
- ▷ "Coasting"

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

GREEN Limit

- ▷ Activate the GREEN Limit:

  "GREEN speed warning":

  A GREEN tip is displayed if the speed of the set GREEN Limit is exceeded.
- ▷ Setting the speed for the GREEN Limit:

  "Tip at:"

  Select the desired speed.

GREEN climate control

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the vehicle's interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior Additionally heat output to seats and exterior mirror is reduced.

Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and coasting, refer to page 192, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN Mode.

Deactivate the function to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.

GREEN potential savings

Shows potential savings with the current settings in percentages.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Display in the instrument cluster

GREEN bonus range

An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range.

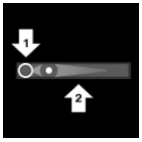
This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display.

The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

- ▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, for instance by backing off the accelerator pedal.

Driving style



A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

The efficiency of your driving style is shown by the position of the mark:

- ▷ Mark inside the green range: efficient driving style.
- ▷ Mark outside the green range: adjust driving style, for example by backing off the accelerator.

GREEN tip, driving instruction

The GREEN tip indicates that the driving style can be adjusted to be more fuel efficient, for example by backing off the accelerator.

Activating the driving style indicator and GREEN tips

The driving style indicator and GREEN tips are shown in the instrument cluster when the GREEN Mode display is activated.

Activating the display via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "System settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "GREEN info"

GREEN tip, symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

Symbol	Measure
	For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.
km/h	Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.
D	Steptronic transmission: Switch from M/S to D or avoid manual shift interventions.

Symbol	Measure
	Manual transmission: Follow the shift instructions.
	Manual transmission: Engage neutral for an engine stop.

Indications on the Control Display

Displaying MINIMALISM information

The current efficiency of the functions in GREEN Mode can be displayed on the Control Display.

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM"

Information is shown on the following functions:

- ▷ Auto Start/Stop function.
- ▷ Energy recovery.
- ▷ Climate control output.
- ▷ Coasting.

Displaying the MINIMALISM analyzer

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM Analyser"

Further information on the MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 193.

Coasting

Concept

The function helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting.

As soon as you step on the brake or accelerator pedal, the engine is automatically coupled again.

General information

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode.

Coasting is automatically activated when the GREEN driving mode is called via the MINI Driving Modes switch, refer to page 137.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function often and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

Functional requirements

In GREEN mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately
30 mph/50 km/h to 100 mph/160 km/h if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.

Operation via shift paddles

Concept

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the coasting mode can be influenced with the shift paddles.

Activating/deactivating coasting via shift paddles

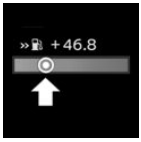
1. Shift to the highest gear by pulling the right shift paddle.
2. Actuate the right shift paddle again to enter coasting mode.

To deactivate, actuate the left shift paddle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Display

Display in the instrument cluster



The bar display below the tachometer is filled in green and the mark appears at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

Indications on the Control Display

The coasting driving condition is displayed in the MINIMALISM Info while driving.

The distance traveled in the coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.

Displaying MINIMALISM information

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM"

System limits

The function is not available if one of the following conditions applies:

- ▷ DSC OFF and TRACTION are activated.
- ▷ Cruise control is activated.
- ▷ If driving in the dynamic limit range.
- ▷ If driving on steep uphill or downhill grades.
- ▷ The battery charge state is temporarily too low.
- ▷ The vehicle electrical system is drawing excessive current.

MINIMALISM analyzer

Concept

The function helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.

For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.

Using this indication, the individual driving style can be oriented toward conserving fuel.

The last 15 minutes of a trip are evaluated.

The range of the vehicle can be extended by an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement

This function is available in GREEN Mode.

Displaying the MINIMALISM analyzer

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "MINIMALISM Analyser"

Display on the Control Display

The display of the MINIMALISM analyzer consists of a fish in a water glass, a table of values and the display of the achieved bonus range.

The fish and the movements of the water in the glass symbolize the efficiency of the driving style.

The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the glass and the better is the fish's mood. If the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the mood of the fish is sullied and a reduced number of asterisks is displayed.

The table of values contains stars and evaluates the driving style in different categories. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are displayed in the table.

The bonus range achieved by a driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is displayed below the table of values. The more efficient the driving style, the faster the bonus range increases.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed while driving.

Tips about the energy saving driving style, Conserving fuel, refer to page 188.

MOVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

REFUELING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 200, prior to refueling.

SAFETY INFORMATION

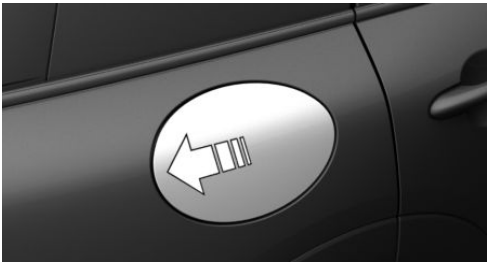
NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

FUEL CAP

Opening

1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.

3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.◀

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

Have the fuel filler flap checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING

General information

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Safety information

NOTE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.◀

FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter helps make a cold start easier, for example.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i. e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

NOTE

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g., manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.◀

NOTE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

Recommended fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 91.

Minimum fuel grade

MINI recommends AKI 89.

WHEELS AND TIRES

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g., twice a month and before a long trip.◂

Checking the tire inflation pressure

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire's temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires at ambient temperature.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar, 2 psi.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: perform a reset of the Tire Pressure Monitor after adjusting tire pressure to a new value.

- ▷ Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
- ▷ Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Checking the inflation pressure of the emergency wheel

Also check the tire inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly, and correct it as needed.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 203, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

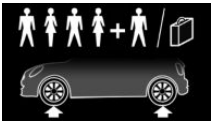
values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 203, and adjust as necessary.

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

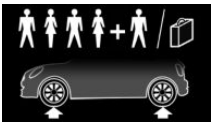
Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

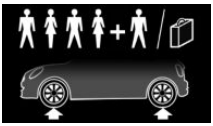
COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S Std 205/55 R 16 91 V M+S A/S RSC 205/55 R 16 91 W Std/RSC 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 94 W XL Std 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

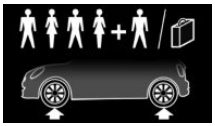
COOPER ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/55 R 16 91 V M+S A/S RSC 205/55 R 16 91 W Std/RSC 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 94 W XL Std	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S Std	2.3 / 33	2.2 / 32
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

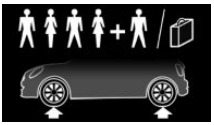
COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.2 / 32
225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

COOPER S ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC	2.4 / 35	2.2 / 32
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std	2.5 / 36	2.4 / 35
225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.5 / 36	2.5 / 36
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.9 / 42
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std 195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	2.5 / 36	2.5 / 36
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.9 / 42	2.9 / 42

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

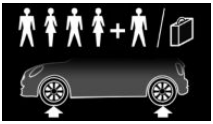
WARNING

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

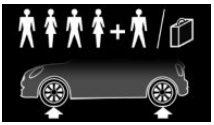
For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 206, and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

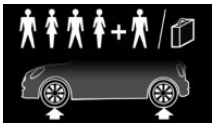
COOPER

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/55 R 16 91 V M+S A/S RSC 205/55 R 16 91 W Std/RSC 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 94 W XL Std 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.2 / 32	2.4 / 35
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S Std	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	2.5 / 36	2.7 / 39
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.7 / 39
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

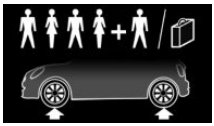
COOPER ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
205/55 R 16 91 V M+S A/S RSC 205/55 R 16 91 W Std/RSC 205/55 R 16 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 94 W XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.4 / 35	2.4 / 35
195/60 R 16 89 H M+S Std	2.5 / 36	2.5 / 36
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	2.6 / 38	2.7 / 39
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

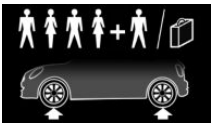
COOPER S

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.7 / 39	2.5 / 36
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC 225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	3.0 / 44	2.8 / 41
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

COOPER S ALL4

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std 225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std	2.7 / 39	2.6 / 38
225/45 R 17 91 V M+S A/S RSC 225/45 R 17 91 W RSC 225/45 R 17 91 H M+S RSC	2.8 / 41	2.7 / 38
225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	3.0 / 44	3.0 / 44
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	3.1 / 45	3.1 / 45
Emergency wheel T 125/70 R 17 98 M	Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h 4.2 / 60	

JOHN COOPER WORKS

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
225/40 R 18 92 Y XL RSC 225/40 ZR 18 92 Y XL Std 195/55 R 17 92 H M+S XL Std	2.8 / 41	2.8 / 41
225/40 R 18 92 V M+S XL RSC	3,1 / 46	3,1 / 46
225/35 R 19 88 Y XL RSC	3.2 / 46	3.2 / 46

TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS

Tire size

205/45 R 17 84 V

205: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

17: rim diameter in inches

84: load rating, not for ZR tires

F: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver's door pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 3816

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

3816: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

DOT … 3816: the tire was manufactured in the 38th week of 2016.

Recommendation

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested

under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

RSC – Run-flat tires

Run-flat tires, refer to page 211, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

TIRE TREAD

Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

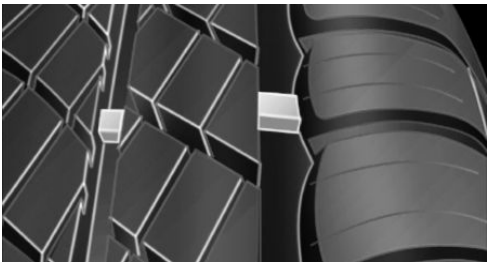
There is an increased risk of hydroplaning if the tire tread depth is less than 0.12 inches/3 mm.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 inches/4 mm.

Below a tread depth of 0.16 inches/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

TIRE DAMAGE

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e.g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.◀

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.◀

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With mounted winter tires, observe and adhere to the permissible maximum speed.

Run-flat tires

If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles

Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

RUN-FLAT TIRES

Concept

Runflat tires permit continued driving under restricted conditions even in the event of a complete loss of tire inflation pressure.

General information

The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.

The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.

Label

RSC label on the tire sidewall.

Changing run-flat tires

For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire.

A dealer's service center will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at a sufficient distance.
- ▷ Change wheels only on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface. On soft or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle or the vehicle jack may slip away sideways.
- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine, or else there is a danger to life.

MOBILITY SYSTEM

The concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

General information

- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

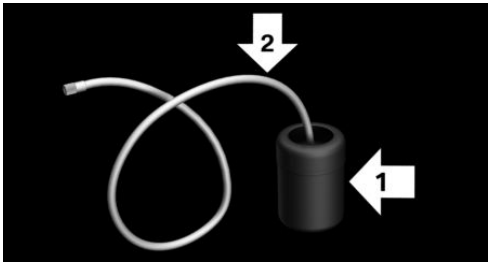
▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Overview

Storage

The Mobility System is in a bag on the left side of the cargo area.

Sealant container

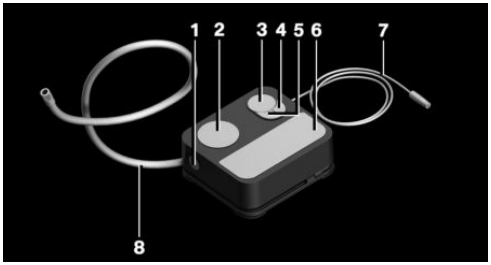


▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.

▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container unlocking

2 Holder for sealant container

3 Inflation pressure dial

4 Reduce inflation pressure

5 On/off switch

6 Compressor

7 Connector/cable for socket

8 Connection hose

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER

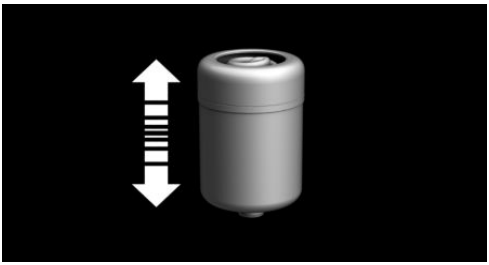
If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

NOTE

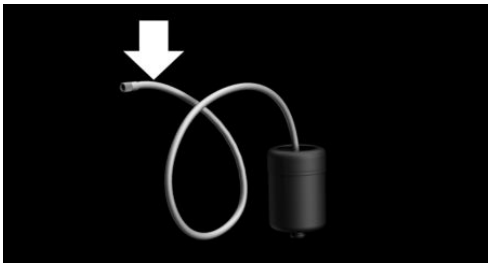
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.◀

Filling

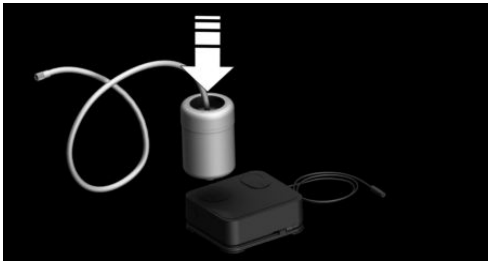
1. Shake the sealant container.



2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



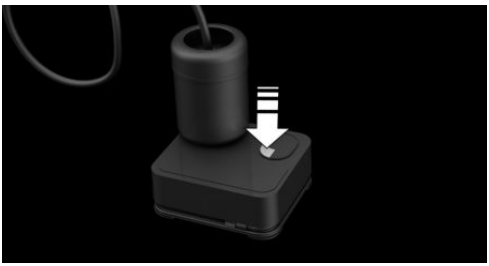
3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.



4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.

5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

Checking and adjusting the tire inflation pressure

Checking

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Read the tire inflation pressure on the tire pressure gage.

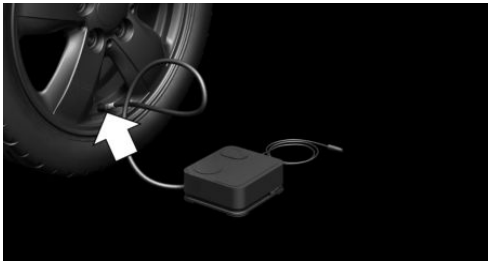
To continue the trip, a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar must be reached.

Removing and stowing the sealant container

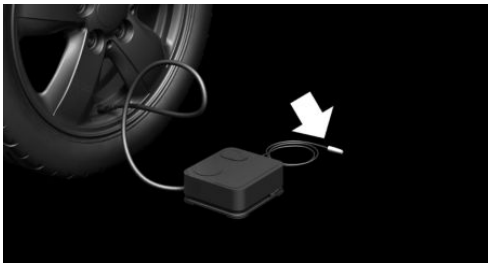
1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Press the red release button.
3. Remove the sealant container from the compressor.
4. Wrap the empty sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

1. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
2. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
3. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



4. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



5. With the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

   If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

   If a tire inflation pressure of at least 2 bar is reached, see Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached.
6. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
7. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
8. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

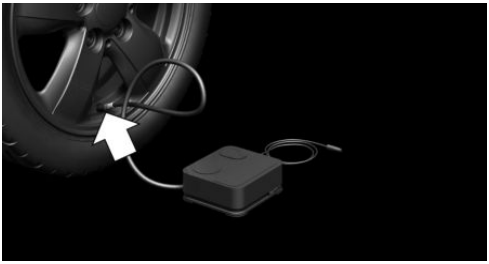
1. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.
2. Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

   Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

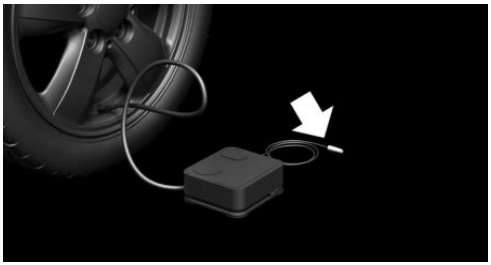
   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Adjustment

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.



3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.



4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
   - ▷ Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - ▷ To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.
5. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the tire valve.
6. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
7. Stow the Mobility System in the vehicle.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 125.

Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 121.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System promptly.

SNOW CHAINS

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

WARNING

With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.◀

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 195/55 R 17.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control, if needed.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

CHANGING WHEELS/TIRES

General information

When using runflat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not always need to be changed immedi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

ately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use; for example, changing from summer to winter tires.. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the jack to attach an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.◀

WARNING

On soft or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the tire/wheel on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface.◀

WARNING

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.◀

WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.◀

WARNING

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.◀

WARNING

A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Securing the vehicle against rolling

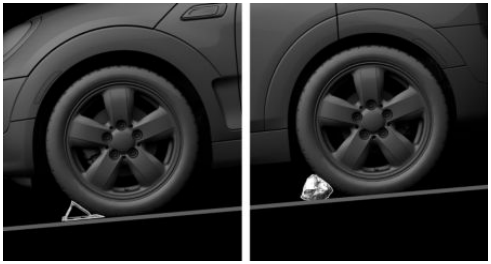
General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place wheel chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel to be changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

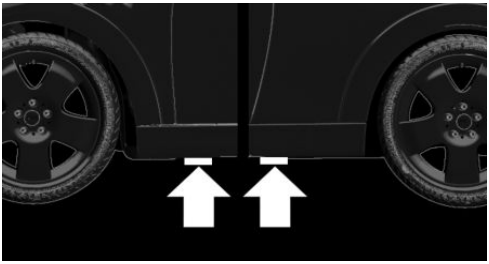


If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks and other suitable objects, for example a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

Preparing the vehicle

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid and non-slip ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- ▷ As soon as the traffic flow permits, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ Depending on your vehicle's equipment, remove the tool and the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
- ▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.
- ▷ Also secure the vehicle against rolling.
- ▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the marked positions.

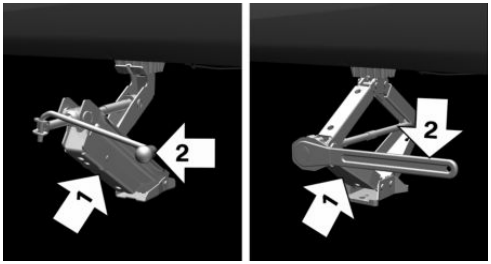
Jacking up the vehicle

WARNING

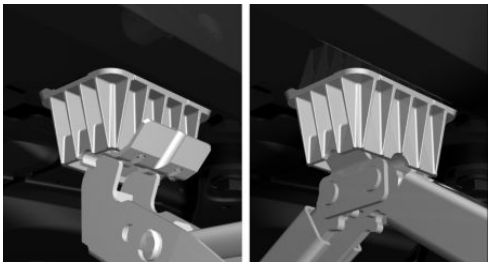
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and

do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.◀

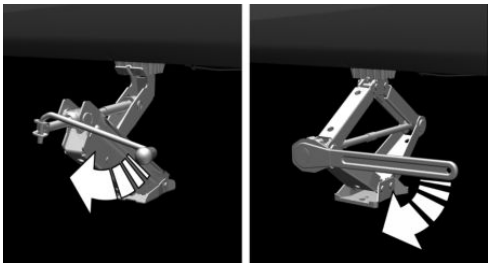
1. Hold the jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the crank or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

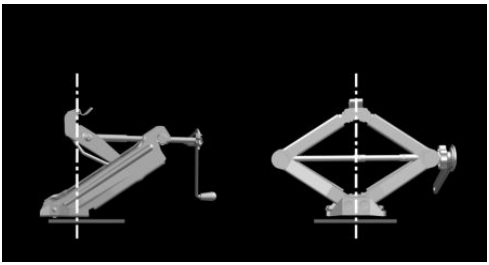


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the crank or lever clockwise.

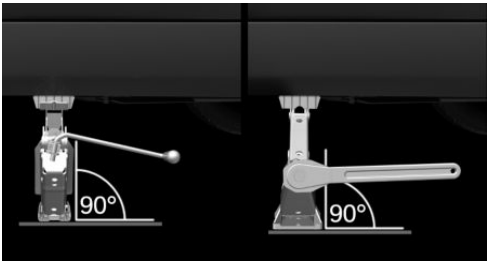


4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot is extended vertically.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank up the vehicle jack until the entire surface of the jack is in contact with the ground and the wheel in question is raised a maximum of 1.2 inches/3 cm off the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
3. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all bolts well in a crosswise pattern.

4. Turn the crank on the vehicle jack counter-clockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
5. Remove the vehicle jack.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

EMERGENCY WHEEL

General information

In the event of a flat tire, the emergency wheel can be used in place of the wheel with the defective tire. The emergency wheel is only intended for temporary use until the defective tire/wheel is replaced.

Removing the emergency wheel

The emergency wheel and the tools are located in the cargo area under the cargo floor panel.

1. Unscrew the wing nut.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Remove the tool holder.
4. Slide the emergency wheel to the left and remove it.

Safety information

WARNING

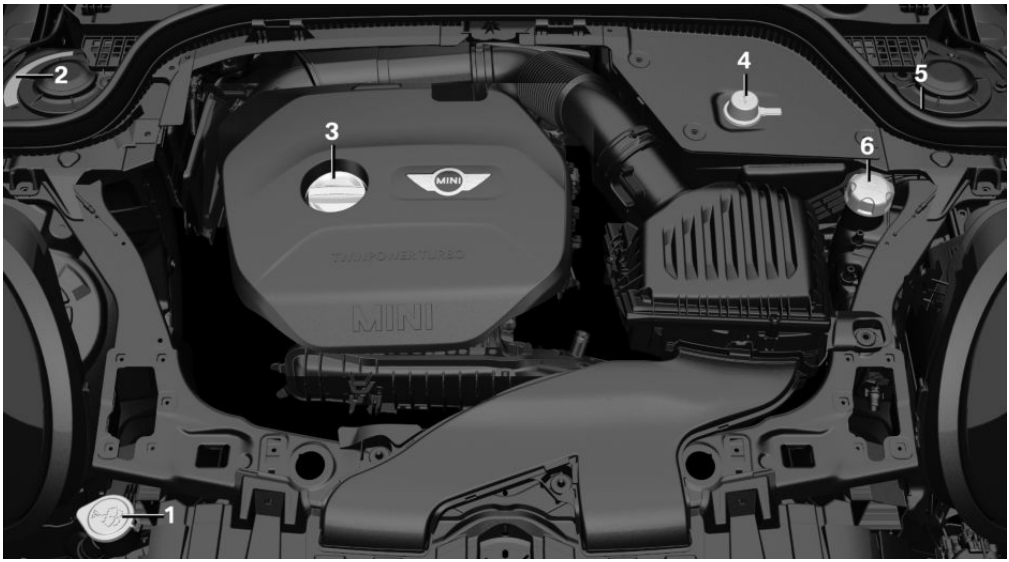
The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur at higher speeds, e.g., reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is a risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.◀

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT



1 Washer fluid reservoir
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Oil filler neck
4 Jump-starting, positive terminal
5 Jump-starting, negative terminal
6 Coolant reservoir

HOOD

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◄

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, e.g., the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◂

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.◂

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◂

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◂

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◂

NOTE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.◂

Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

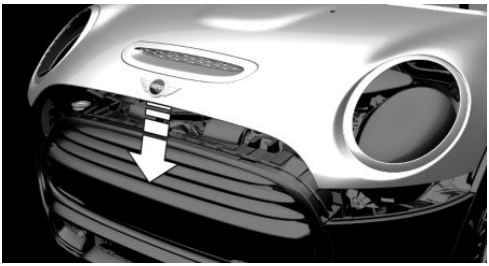
2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood



Let the hood fall from approx. 16 inches/40 cm, arrow.

The hood must engage on both sides.

ENGINE OIL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Status display.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

Status display

The concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

With frequent short-distance trips, perform a detailed measurement.

Displaying the engine oil level

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Engine oil level display messages

Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.

If the engine oil level is too low within the next 125 miles/200 km, add engine oil, refer to page 224.

A red indicator light indicates that the engine oil pressure is too high or too low.

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◂

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Detailed measurement

The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary, and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Via the onboard monitor:

1. "My MINI"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Measure engine oil level"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

ADDING ENGINE OIL

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating materials, e.g., oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◂

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage.

Add engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.◂

NOTE

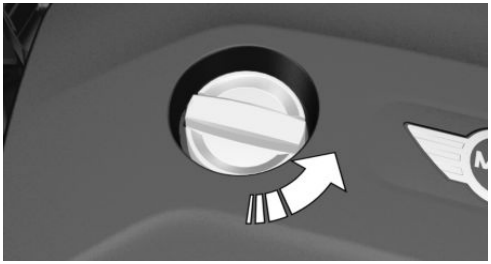
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 221.

Opening the oil filler neck

1. Open the hood, refer to page 221.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise, arrow.



3. Add engine oil.

After refilling, perform a detailed measurement, refer to page 224.

ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Safety information

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.◀

NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.◀

Suitable engine oil types

Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01.
API SL or superior oil rating.

Viscosity grades

Gasoline engine:

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-20. Alternatively, also engine oils with viscosity grades SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-20, SAE 5W-30, SAE 0W-40 or SAE 5W-40 can be used.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◀

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.

COOLANT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

Coolant consists of water and additives.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

SAFETY INFORMATION

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◀

WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◀

COOLANT LEVEL

Overview

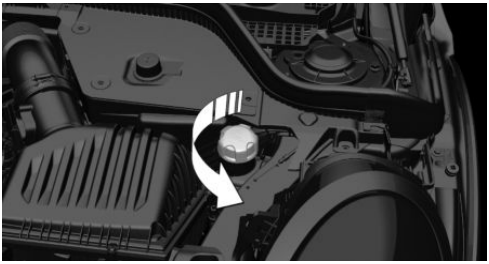
The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page 221.

Open the hood, refer to page 221.

Checking

There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

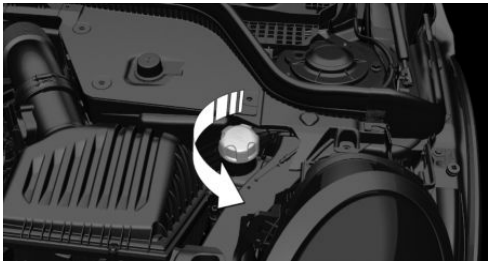
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.

Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Close cap.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

DISPOSAL

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

MAINTENANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service requirements, refer to page 100, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a

dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

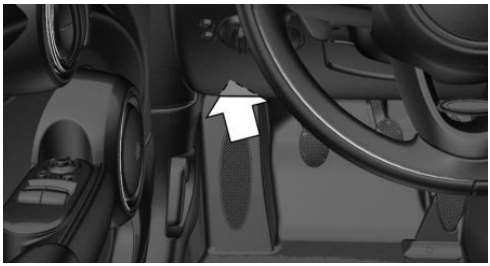
SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS

Safety information

NOTE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.◀

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

REPLACING COMPONENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT

The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

After use, secure the bag for the onboard vehicle tool kit on a lashing eye again.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Safety information

NOTE

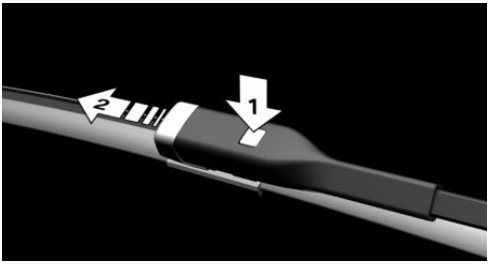
If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.◂

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◂

Front wiper blades

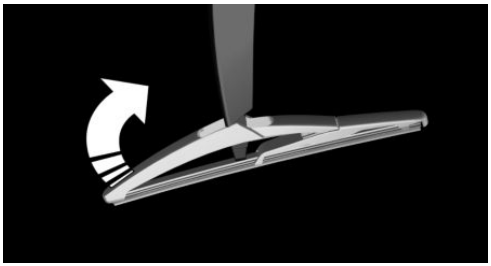
1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Press button, arrow 1, and pull out the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Attach a new wiper blade. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
5. Fold down the wiper arm.

Rear wiper blades

1. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
2. Turn the wiper blade all the way back.



3. Push the wiper blade out of the fastening by continuing to turn it all the way.
4. Insert the new wiper blade by following the steps in reverse order. The wiper blade must engage audibly.
5. Fold down the wiper arm.

LIGHT AND BULB REPLACEMENT

General information

Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 232.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes are related to conventional lasers and are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 232.

Safety information

Lights and bulbs

WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.◀

WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.◀

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

If despite driving with the lights switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the lamp, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

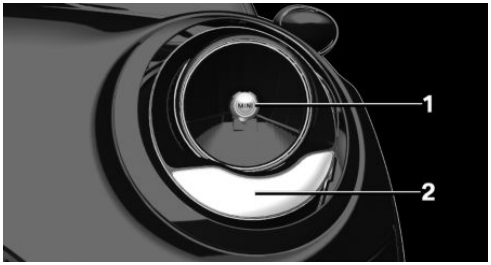
Headlight setting

The headlight adjustments can be affected by changing lights and bulbs. After the headlight adjustment was changed, have it checked and, if necessary, corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front halogen lights, bulb replacement

Overview

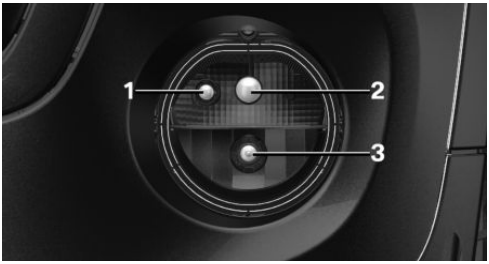
Halogen headlights



1 Low beams/high beams

2 Turn signal

Bug light



1 Parking lights

2 Daytime running lights

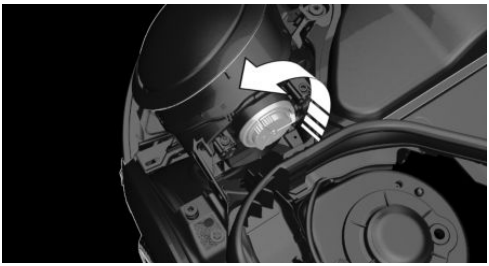
3 Fog lights

Low beams/high beams

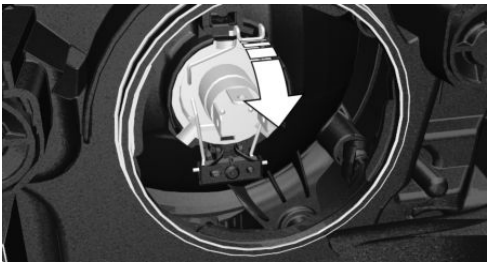
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs: H4

1. Open the hood, refer to page 222.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.



3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.



5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Turn signal

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.

3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.

4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.

5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs:

- ▷ Parking lights for halogen headlights: W5W

  Parking lights for LED headlights: W5W NBV.
- ▷ Daytime running light: PSX24W.
- ▷ Fog light: H8.

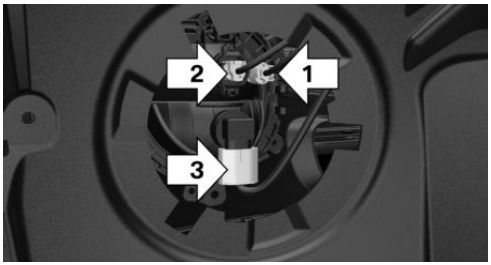
Replacing the bulbs

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.

3. Pull off the connector.
4. Remove the bulb holder.

- ▷ Parking lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 1, counterclockwise and remove.
- ▷ Daytime running lights: squeeze the upper and lower locks of the bulb holder, arrow 2, and remove the bulb holder.

  For better accessibility, remove the bulb of the fog light as needed.
- ▷ Fog lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 3, counterclockwise and remove.



5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

   The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

LED front lights, bulb replacement

General information

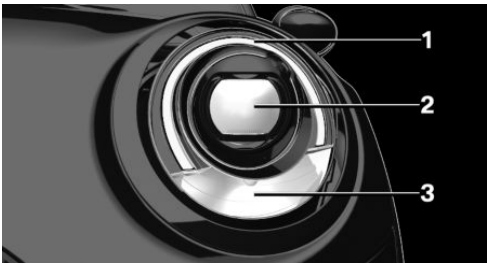
The following lights feature LED technology:

- ▷ Daytime running lights
- ▷ High beams
- ▷ Low beams
- ▷ Parking lights
- ▷ Fog lights

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

Position of the headlights

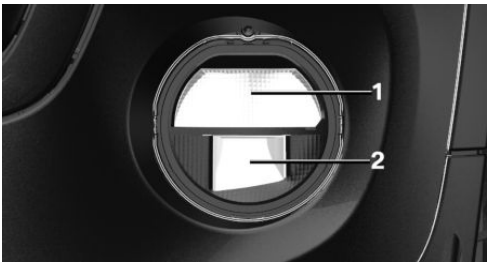


1 Daytime running lights

2 Low beams/high beams

3 Turn signal

LED bug light



1 Parking lights

2 Fog lights

Turn signal

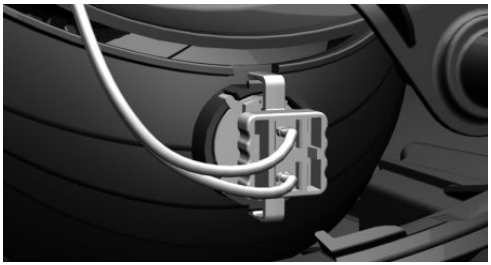
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Bulbs: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.

3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.

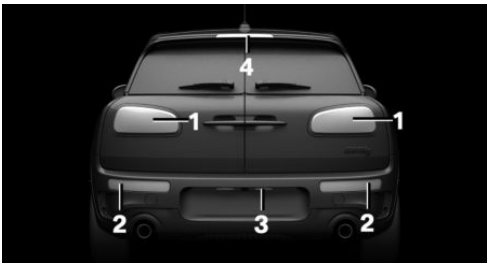
4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.



5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

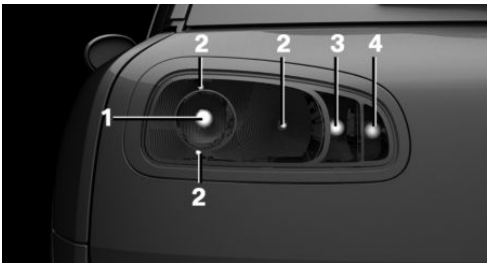
Tail lights, bulb replacement

Overview



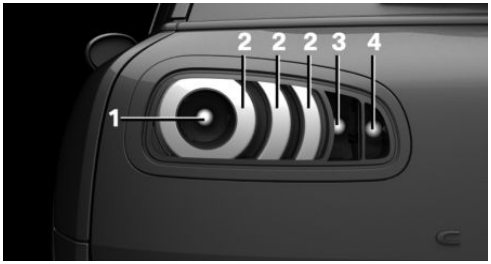
1 Tail lights in split doors
2 Tail lights in bumpers
3 License plate light
4 Center brake light

Tail lights in split doors



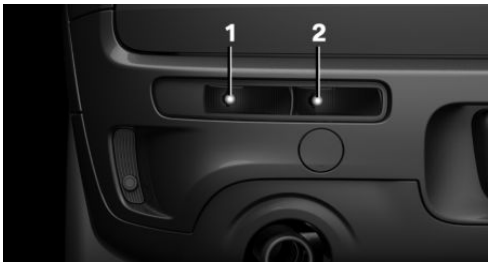
1 Turn signal
2 Tail lights
3 Rear fog light
4 Reversing lights

LED tail lights in the split doors



1 Turn signal
2 Tail lights
3 Rear fog light
4 Reversing lights

Tail lights in bumpers



1 Tail lights/brake lights
2 Turn signal

In addition, the tail lights in the bumper assume the functions of tail light and turn signals, if the split doors are open.

Tail lights in split doors

Note the safety instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Turn signals/tail lights

Bulbs: P21W/W5W

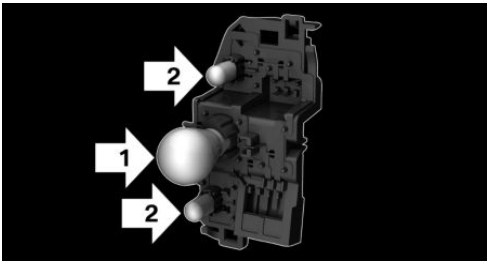
1. Open the split doors.
2. Remove left or right cover. If necessary, it is then possible to pry the cover off using a screwdriver or a similar plastic tool.

3. Press the latches together upward, arrow 1, and remove the bulb holder.

   Loosen the plug connector, arrow 2, on the bulb holder.

4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   ▷ Arrow 1: turn signal.

▷ Arrow 2: tail light.

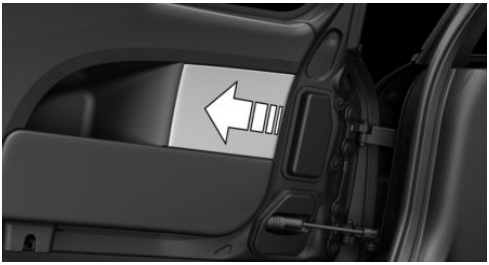


6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Rear fog lights/reversing lights/tail lights

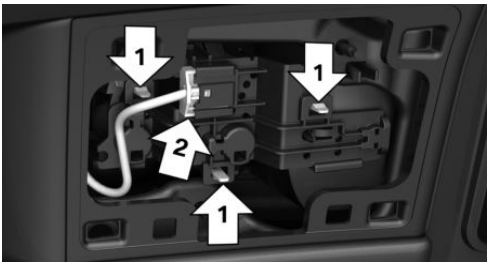
Bulbs: P21W/W5W

1. Open the split doors.
2. Remove left or right cover.

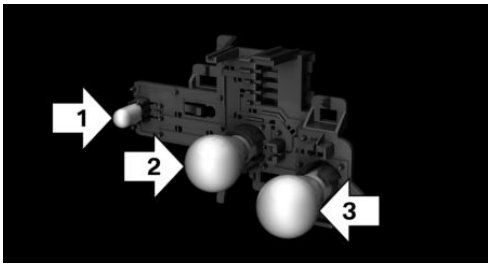


3. Press the latches together in the direction of the arrow, arrow 1, and remove the bulb holder.

   Loosen the plug connector, arrow 2, on the bulb holder.



4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   ▷ Arrow 1: tail light.
   ▷ Arrow 2: rear fog lights.
   ▷ Arrow 3: reversing light.



6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

Tail lamps in bumpers

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

Brake lights/turn signals

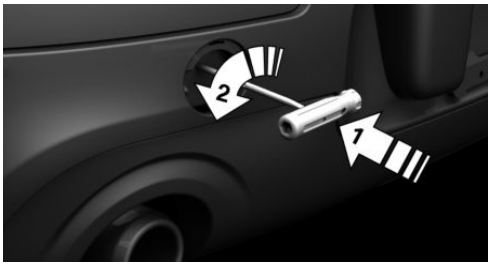
Bulbs: P21W

1. Press out cover below the tail lamp.

2. Remove the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit.

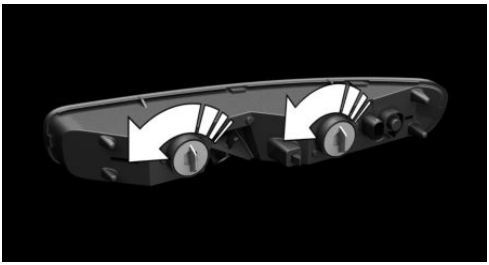
3. Pull the screwdriver blade from the handle and place it on the recessed-head screw head in the bumper.

4. Attach the screw driver handle with the slot to the blade, arrow 1.



5. Loosen screw in the bumper, arrow 2.
6. Pull tail lamp from the bumper.

7. Turn the bulb holder counter-clockwise and remove nonworking bulb.



8. To insert the new bulb and install the tail lamp, proceed in reverse order of removal. Make sure that the bulb holder sits tight in the tail lamp.

Central brake lamp and license plate lamp

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

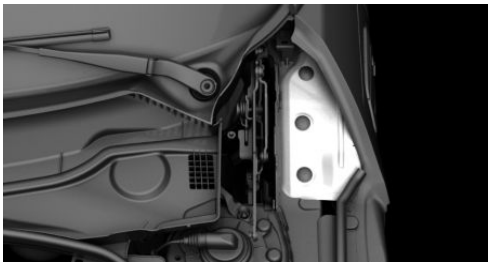
Side turn signal, bulb replacement

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 232.

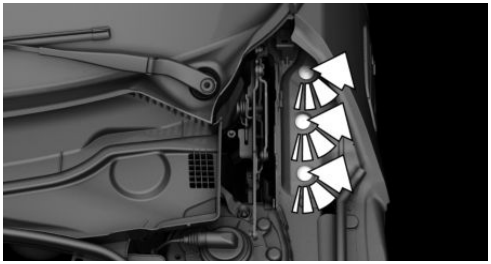
Bulbs:

▷ With white lens: WY5W.

1. Open the hood. The covers of the side turn signal lights are on the left and right next to the hinges of the hood.



2. Loosen nuts of the cover by hand and remove the cover.



3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

4. Replace the bulb.
5. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. Insert the nuts of the cover and press down.

VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing the vehicle battery

General information

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the vehicle battery be registered on the vehicle by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

Safety information

NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A red indicator lamp is displayed when the battery is discharged.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

Safety information

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 243, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- ▷ Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

FUSES

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

Replacing a fuse

The fuses are located in the glove compartment

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box.

1. Open the glove compartment.
2. Swing the cover down, arrow.

3. Replace the fuse in question.

BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

The button is located above the Control Display.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Service availability

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the onboard monitor or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

WARNING TRIANGLE

Depending on the equipment version, the warning triangle is located in the cargo area or under the cargo floor panel.

FIRST-AID KIT

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

JUMP-STARTING

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◀

Preparation

NOTE

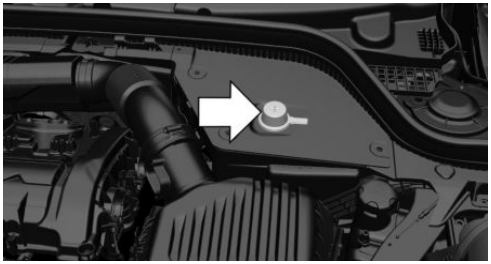
In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◀

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

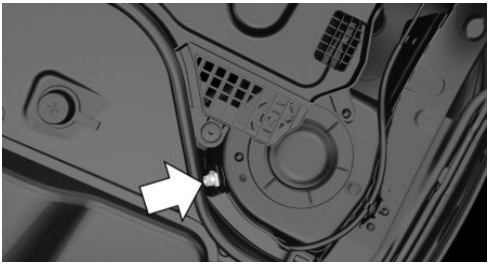
WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◀



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.

3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Steptronic transmission with driven front axle: transporting the vehicle

General information

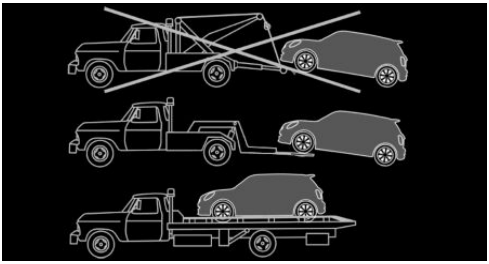
The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

Safety information

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform.◀

Tow truck



Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◀

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a disabled vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance. The vehicle can only be pushed in selector lever position N.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage selector lever position N.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

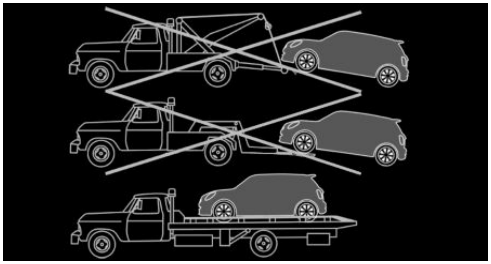
Manually unlock the transmission lock, refer to page 92, if needed.

Steptronic transmission with ALL4: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◀

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a disabled vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance. The vehicle can only be pushed in selector lever position N.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll, proceed as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Engage selector lever position N.

If there is a malfunction, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Manually unlock the transmission lock, refer to page 92, if needed.

Manual transmission

Observe before towing your vehicle

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Towing

NOTE

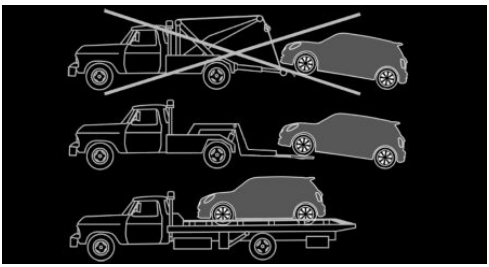
If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is a risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◀

Information the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Tow truck

With driven front axle

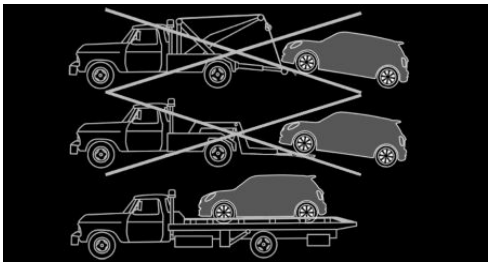


Have your vehicle transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◂

With ALL4



Have your vehicle transported on a flatbed surface only

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◂

NOTE

When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of property damage. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◂

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◂

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◂

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

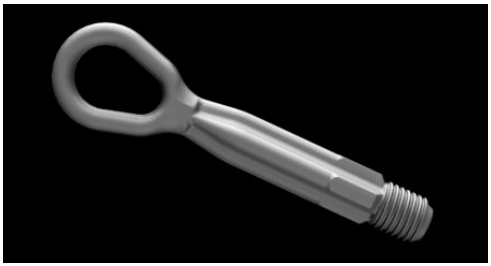
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◂

Tow fitting

General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 231, are together in the cargo area.

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there can be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of property damage. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

Screw thread for tow fitting

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 242. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 78.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.

5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CARE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

VEHICLE WASHES

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

Safety information

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◀

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 inches/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ With rod antenna: unscrew the rod antenna to avoid rod antenna breakage.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

Before driving into a vehicle wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a vehicle wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:

1. Drive into the vehicle wash.
2. Shift to neutral.
3. Switch the engine off.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the vehicle wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.

3. Make sure that the parking brake is released.
4. Switch the engine off.

   In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and two Check-Control messages are displayed.

Some vehicle washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

To start the engine with manual transmission:

1. Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.
2. Press on the clutch pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

To start the engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.
2. Depress the brake pedal.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Headlights

Do not rub the headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated when braking helps to dry the brake discs and pads and protect them from corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

VEHICLE CARE

Vehicle care products

General information

MINI recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from MINI. Suitable care products are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased

wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◀

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◀

Plastic components are e. g:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.

▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◀

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the switchs to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays/Screens/Projection lenses

NOTE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◀

NOTE

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Extending projection lens, refer to page 108.

Long-term

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

FIND ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

AT A GLANCE

CONTROLS

DRIVING TIPS

MOBILITY

REFERENCE

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

TECHNICAL DATA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, e.g., a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

MINI Clubman		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	79.6/2,022
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	70.9/1,800
Height	inches/mm	56.7/1,441
Length	inches/mm	168.3/4,275
Wheelbase	inches/mm	105.1/2,670
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	37.1/11.3

WEIGHTS

MINI Cooper Clubman		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,231/1,919
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,275/1,939
Load	lbs/kg	981/445
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,150/975
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,200/998
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,169/984
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	17.5-47.9
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	9.8-33.2/278-941

MINI Cooper S Clubman		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,259/1,932
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,330/1,964
Load	lbs/kg	926/420
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,251/1,021
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,330/1,057
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,110/957
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	17.5-47.9
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	12.7-44.1/360-1,250

MINI Cooper Clubman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,389/1,991
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,429/2,009
Load	lbs/kg	899/408
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,260/1,025
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,299/1,043
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,220/1,007
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	17.5-47.9
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	12.7-44.1/360-1,250

MINI Cooper S Clubman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,480/2,032
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,519/2,050
Load	lbs/kg	939/426
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,339/1,061
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,370/1,075
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,251/1,021
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	17.5-47.9
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	12.7-44.1/360-1,250

MINI John Cooper Works Clubman ALL4		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,519/2,050

MINI John Cooper Works Clubman ALL4		
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	4,564/2,070
Load	lbs/kg	939/426
Approved front axle load		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	2,348/1,065
Steptronic transmission	lbs/kg	2,392/1,085
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,271/1,030
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75
Cargo area capacity	cu ft	17.5-47.9
Canada: cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	12.7-44.1/360-1,250

CAPACITIES

MINI Clubman	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	13.2/50.0	Fuel quality, refer to page 200

APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

UPDATES MADE AFTER THE EDITORIAL DEADLINE

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline.

- ▷ Overview: General settings: Data protection.
- ▷ Fuel quality: Petrol, refer to page 200.
- ▷ Wheels and tires: Wheel change: Safety information, refer to page 217, .

LICENSE TEXTS AND CERTIFICATIONS

The following applies in addition to the radio transmission license texts of the Integrated Owner’s Manual in the vehicle.

Remote Control

Argentine Republic

CNC Aprobado No.: H-12091

Brazil

Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.

Canada

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et

(2) tl'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

FCC § 15.19 Labelling requirements

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC § 15.21 Information to user

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Indonesia

29311/SDPPI/2013

2181

Japan

201-135124

Mexico

COFETEL: RLVBHEID13–0912

Marca: Hella

Modelo (s): IDGNG1

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y

(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Oman

OMAN TRA

TRA/TA-R/1037/13

D090258

Philippines

NTC

Type Approved

No.: ESD-1307076C

Singapore

Complies with

IDA Standards

DA101586

South Africa

TA-2013/004

APPROVED

Taiwan

本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定

1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

UAE

TRA REGISTERED No: ER0107463/13

DEALER No: DA0053436/10

USA

FCC § 15.19 Labelling requirements

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC § 15.21 Information to user

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Wireless Charging

FCC ID: QZ9-WCA

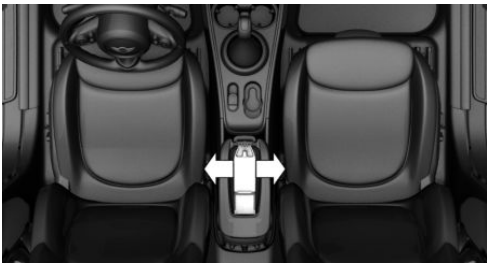
FCC Part 18 compliance

NOTE: This device complies with Part 18 of the FCC Rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. This product may cause interference to radio equipment and should not be installed near maritime safety communications equipment or other critical navigation or communication equipment operating between 0.45–30 MHz.

(a) The interference potential of device or system: “Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.”

WIRELESS CHARGING TRAY



Mounting position of the product.

Note

This device has been tested for human exposure limits and found compliant at a minimum distance of 4 in/10 cm during operation.

Therefore, a distance of 4 in/10 cm must be maintained in every direction when operating the device.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16

EVERYTHING FROM A TO Z

INDEX

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 135
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 93
Accessories and parts 8
ACC, see camera-based cruise control 139
Activated-charcoal filter 163
Active Cruise Control, see camera-based cruise control 139
Active Guard, see Intelligent Safety 127
Additives, oil 225
Adjustments, steering wheel 71
After washing vehicle 250
Airbags 118
Airbags, indicator/warning light 120
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 158, 162
Air conditioner 157
Air, dehumidifying, see Cooling function 158, 161
Air distribution, manual 159, 162
Air flow, air conditioner 158
Air flow, automatic climate control 162
Air pressure, tires 202
Air vents, see Ventilation 163
Alarm system 56
Alarm triggering 56
Alarm, unintentional 57
ALL4 137
All-season tires, see Winter tires 211
All-wheel drive, see ALL4 137
Alternative oil types 225
Antifreeze, washer fluid 88
Antilock Brake System, ABS 135
Anti-slip control, see DSC 135
App, MINI Motorer's Guide 6
Approved axle load 257
Arrival time 105
Ash tray 169
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 242
Assistance when driving off 138
AUTO intensity 162
Automatic climate control 160
Automatic Curb Monitor 70
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags 120
Automatic headlight control 113
Automatic locking 55
Automatic recirculated-air control 162
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 89
Automatic unlocking 55
Automatic vehicle wash 249
AUTO program, automatic climate control 161
AUTO program, intensity 162
Auto Start/Stop function 80
Auto washing 249
AUX-IN port, position in vehicle 170
Average fuel consumption 104
Average speed 105
Axle loads, weights 257

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 63, 64
Backrest, seats 62
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 242
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 240
Battery, vehicle 240
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 244
Belts, safety belts 65
Beverage holder, cup holder 173
Blocking, power window 59
Bluetooth connection 34
Bonus range, GREEN Mode 191
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 173
Brake assistant 135
Brake discs, break-in 184
Brake pads, break-in 184
Braking, information 185
Breakdown assistance 242
Break-in 184
Brightness of Control Display 31
Bug light 233
Bulb replacement 232
Bulb replacement, front 233, 235
Bulb replacement, rear 236
Bulb replacement, side 239
Bulbs and lights 232
Button, Start/Stop 78
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 242

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Calling up mirror adjustment 56
Calling up seat adjustment 56
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 127
Camera-based cruise control 139
Camera lenses, care 252
Camera, rearview camera 151
Can holder, see Cup holder 173
Car battery 240
Care, displays 252
Care, vehicle 250
Care, washing the vehicle 249
Cargo area 175
Cargo area, adapting size 179
Cargo area door, see split doors 51
Cargo area, enlarging 178
Cargo area, loading 176
Cargo area, storage compartments 177
Cargo cover 176
Cargo position, rear seat backrest 178
Cargo, stowing and securing 176
Cargo straps 176
Carpet, care 252
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 185
CBS Condition Based Service 229
Center armrest 173
Center console 16
Central instrument cluster, LED ring 107
Central locking system, unlocking, from inside 48
Central screen, see Control Display 18
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 7
Changing parts 231
Changing wheels 216
Changing wheels/tires 210
Chassis number, see vehicle identification number 10
Check Control 95
Checking the oil level electronically 223
Children, seating position 73
Children, transporting safely 73
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 75
Child restraint system 73
Child restraint systems, mounting 74
Child safety locks 77
Child seat, mounting 74
Child seats 73
Chrome parts, care 251
CID (central information display), refer to On-Board computer 103
Cigarette lighter 169
City light braking function warning with Approach control 128
Cleaning, displays 252
Climate control 157, 160
Clothes hooks 174
Coasting 192
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 192
Coasting with idling engine 192
Combination switch, see Turn signals 84
Combi switch, see wiper system 85
Comfort Access 49
Compartments in the doors 173
Compass 167
Compressor 212
Condensation on windows 163
Condensation under the vehicle 186
Condition Based Service CBS 229
Configuring driving program 138
Confirmation signal 56
Connecting device 33
Connecting mobile phone 33
Connecting smartphone 33
Connecting telephone 33
Connections 33
Control Display 18
Control Display, settings 30
Controller 19
Controller operation 19
Control systems, driving stability 135
Convenient opening 45
Coolant 227
Cooling function 158, 161
Cooling, maximum 161
Cooling system 227
Cornering light 114
Corrosion on brake discs 186
Cosmetic mirror 169
Coupling, see Pairing 33
Courtesy lights during unlocking 45
Courtesy lights with the vehicle locked 45
Cruise control 145
Cruise control, active 139
Cruise control with distance control, see camera-based cruise control 139
Cruise control without distance control, see cruise control 145
Cruising range 100
Cup holder 173
Current fuel consumption 100

D

Damage, tires 210
Damping control, dynamic 137
Data protection, settings 32
Data, technical 256, 259
Date 31
Date display 100
Daytime running lights 114
Defrosting, see defrosting the windows 159
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 163
Defrosting the windows 159
Dehumidifying, air 158, 161
Deleting personal data 33
Deletion of personal data 33
Destination distance 105
Device list 33
Digital clock 100
Digital compass 167
Dimensions 256
Dimmable exterior mirrors 70
Dimmable interior mirror 71
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 84
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 95
Display, engine temperature 105
Display, GREEN Mode 189
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 116
Displays 94
Displays, care 252
Disposal, coolant 228
Disposal, vehicle battery 241
Distance control, see PDC 147
Distance to destination 105
Divided screen view, split screen 24
Drive-off assistant 138
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 135
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 127
Driver profiles 52
Driver profiles, exporting profiles 54
Driver profiles, importing profiles 54
Driving Dynamics Control, see MINI Driving Modes switch 137
Driving Excitement, SPORT 106
Driving instructions, break-in 184
Driving mode, GREEN 189
Driving mode, GREEN driving style analysis 193
Driving modes 137
Driving notes, general 185
Driving on racetracks 187
Driving stability control systems 135
Driving style analysis 193
Driving tip, GREEN tip 191
Driving tips 185
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 135
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 136
Dynamic Damping Control 137
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 135
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 136

E

Easy Opener 50
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 95
Electronic oil measurement 223
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 135
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 199
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 242
Emergency wheel, compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 220
Energy Control 100
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 80
Engine, automatic switch-off 80
Engine compartment 221
Engine compartment, working in 221
Engine coolant 227
Engine idling when driving, coasting 192
Engine oil 223
Engine oil, adding 224
Engine oil additives 225
Engine oil change 225
Engine oil filler neck 224
Engine oil types, alternative 225
Engine oil types, suitable 225
Engine start, jump-starting 242
Engine start, see Starting the engine 79
Engine stop 80
Engine temperature, display 105
Entering a vehicle wash 249
Equipment, interior 165
Error displays, see Check Control 95
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 135
Exchanging wheels/tires 210
Exhaust system 185
Exiting a vehicle wash 249
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 70
Exterior mirrors 69

Exterior mirrors, Automatic Curb Monitor 70
External start 242
External temperature display 99
External temperature warning 99
Eyes for securing cargo 176

F

Failure message, see Check Control 95
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 57
Fan, see Air flow 158, 162
Favorites buttons, onboard monitor 25
Filler neck for engine oil 224
Fine wood, care 251
First-aid kit 242
Fish, MINIMALISM display 193
Flat tire, changing wheels 216
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 125
Flat tire, repairing 212
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Flat tire, warning lamp 123, 126
Flooding 185
Floor carpet, care 252
Floor mats, care 252
Fogged up windows 159
Fold-away position, windshield wipers 87
Fold back rear seat backrests 178
Foot brake 185
For Your Own Safety 7
Front airbags 118
Front fog lights 115
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 120
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator light 121
Front seats 62
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 125
Fuel 200
Fuel cap 198
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 104
Fuel filler flap 198
Fuel gauge 99
Fuel quality 200
Fuel recommendation 200
Fuel, tank capacity 259
Fuse 241

G

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control 165
Gasoline 200
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 90
Gear shift indicator 101
General driving notes 185
General settings 30
Glare shield 169
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 61
Glass sunroof, see Panoramic glass sunroof 60
Glove compartment 172
GREEN bonus range 191
GREEN Mode 189
GREEN - program, driving dynamics 137
GREEN tip, driving tip 191
Gross vehicle weight, approved 257
Ground clearance 186

H

Halogen headlights 233
Handbrake, see Parking brake 82
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 166
Hazard warning flashers 242
Head airbag 118
Headlight control, automatic 113
Headlight courtesy delay feature 113
Headlight flasher 85
Headlight glass 232
Headlights, care 250
Head restraints, front 66
Head restraints, rear 68
Head-up Display 108
Head-Up Display, Shift point indicator 110
Head-up Display, sport displays 110
Head-up Display, standard view 109
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 176
High-beam Assistant 114
High beams 85
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 114
Hills 186
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 138
Holder for beverages 173
Homepage 6
Hood 221
Horn 14
Hot exhaust system 185
HUD Head-up Display 108
Hydroplaning 185

I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 99
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 99
Identification marks, tires 208
Identification number, see vehicle identification number 10
Ignition off 78
Ignition on 78

Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster 107
Indication of a flat tire 123, 126
Indicator light, see Check Control 95
Individual air distribution 159, 162
Individual settings, see driver profiles 52
Inflation pressure, tires 202
Inflation pressure warning, tires 125
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 122
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 126
Instrument cluster 94
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 95
Instrument lighting 116
Integrated key 47
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 40
Intelligent Safety 127
Intended use 7
Intensity, AUTO program 162
Interior equipment 165
Interior lights 116
Interior lights during unlocking 45
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 45
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 71
Interior mirror, compass 167
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 71
Interior motion sensor 57
Internet site 6
Interval display, service requirements 100
Interval mode 86
In the vicinity of the center console 16
In the vicinity of the roof-liner 17
In the vicinity of the steering wheel 14

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 218
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 90
Jump-starting 242

K

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 49
Key, see Integrated key 47
Key, see Remote control 44
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 90
Knee airbag 119

L

Label on recommended tires 211
Language, on the Control Display 30
Lashing eyes 176
LATCH child restraint fixing system 75
Launch Control 93
Leather, care 250
LED ring, central instrument cluster 107
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 232
Letters and numbers, entering 21
Light 112
Light-alloy wheels, care 251
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 232
Lighter 169
Lighting 112
Light replacement 232
Light replacement, front 233, 235
Light replacement, rear 236
Light replacement, side 239
Lights and bulbs 232
Light switch 112
List of all messages 32
Load 176
Loading 175
Loading position 178
Locking, automatic 55
Locking, from inside 48
Locking, settings 55
Low beams 112
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 114
Lower back support 64
Lower back support, mechanical 63
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 187
Lumbar support 64
Lumbar support, mechanical 63

M

Maintenance 229
Maintenance requirements 229
Maintenance, service requirements 100
Maintenance system, MINI 229
Make-up mirror 169
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 95
Manual air distribution 159, 162
Manual air flow 158, 162
Manual brake, see Parking brake 82
Manual mode, transmission 91

Manual operation, exterior mirrors 70
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 199
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 148
Manual operation, rearview camera 151
Manual transmission 89
Manufacturer of the MINI 7
Marking, run-flat tires 211
Maximum cooling 161
Maximum speed, display 102
Maximum speed, winter tires 211
Measurement, units of 31
Mechanical key 47
Medical kit 242
Memory, seat, mirror 69
Menu in instrument cluster 103
Menus, onboard monitor 19
Messages 32
Messages, see Check Control 95
Microfilter 159, 163
MID - program, driving dynamics 137
MINI Connected, see Integrated Owner's Manual
MINI driving modes 137
MINI logo projection during unlocking 45
MINI maintenance system 229
MINIMALISM analyzer 193
MINIMALISM information 192
MINI Motorer’s Guide app 6
Minimum tread, tires 209
Mirror memory 69
Mirrors 69
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 185
Mobility System 212
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 7
Moisture in headlight 232
Monitor, see Control Display 18
Mounting of child restraint systems 74
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 14
Multimedia, see Integrated Owner's Manual

N

Navigation, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 66
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 68
Neutral cleaner, see Wheel cleaner 251
New wheels and tires 210
No-touch opening the split doors 50

O

OBD Onboard Diagnostics 230
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 152
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 201
Odometer 99
Office, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Oil 223
Oil, adding 224
Oil additives 225
Oil change 225
Oil change interval, service requirements 100
Oil filler neck 224
Oil types, alternative 225
Oil types, suitable 225
Old batteries, disposal 241
Onboard computer 103
Onboard computer, refer to Onboard computer 103
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 230
Onboard monitor 18
Onboard monitor operating concept 18
Onboard vehicle tool kit 231
Opening and closing 44
Opening, from inside 48
Operating menus, onboard monitor 18
Operation via the Controller 19
Operation via touchscreen 22
Optional equipment 7
Outside air, see Automatic recirculated-air control 162

P

Paint, vehicle 250
Panoramic glass sunroof 60
Parallel parking assistant 153
Park Distance Control PDC 147
Parked vehicle, condensation 186
Parked-vehicle ventilation 164
Parking aid, see PDC 147
Parking assistant 153
Parking brake 82
Parking lights 112
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side mirror, tilting 70
Pathway lines, rearview camera 151
PDC Park Distance Control 147
Pedestrian warning with Approach control 131
Performance Control 136
Personal profile, see driver profiles 52

Phone, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Pinch protection system, glass sunroof 61
Pinch protection system, windows 59
Plastic, care 251
Post Crash — iBrake 134
Power failure 241
Power windows 58
Prescribed engine oil types 225
Pressure, tire air pressure 202
Pressure warning, tires 125
Profiles, see driver profiles 52
Protective function, glass sunroof 61
Protective function, windows 59
Push-and-turn reel, refer to controller 19

R

Racetrack operation 187
Radiator fluid 227
Radio-operated remote control, opening/closing 44
Radio ready state 78
Radio, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Rain sensor 86
Ratchet straps 176
Rear fog lights 115
Rear lights 236
Rearview camera 150
Rearview mirror 69
Rear window defroster 159, 163
Recirculated-air filter 163
Recirculated-air mode 158, 162
Recommended fuel grade 201
Recommended tire brands 211
Refueling 198
Remaining range 100
Remote control, additional 47
Remote control, loss 47
Remote control, malfunction 47
Remote control, opening/closing 44
Remote control, replacing the battery 46
Remote control, universal 165
Replacing parts 231
Replacing the battery, remote control 46
Replacing wheels/tires 210
Reporting safety malfunctions 10
RES CNCL button, see camera-based cruise control 139
RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 145
Reserve warning, see Range 100
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 122
Retreaded tires 211
Roadside parking lights 113
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 166
RON recommended fuel grade 201
Roofliner 17
Roof load capacity 257
Roof-mounted luggage rack 187
RSC Run Flat System Component, see Run-flat tires 211
Rubber components, care 251
Run-flat tires 211

S

Safe braking 185
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 66
Safety belts 65
Safety belts, care 252
Safety locks, doors, and windows 77
Safety switch, windows 59
Safety systems, airbags 118
Saving fuel 188
Screen, see Control Display 18
Screwdriver 231
Sealant 212
Seat and mirror memory 69
Seat belts, see Safety belts 65
Seat heating, front 65
Seating position for children 73
Seats, front 62
Securing cargo 176
Selection list in instrument cluster 103
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 90
Sensors, care 252
Service and warranty 8
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 229
Service requirements, display 100
Service, Roadside Assistance 242
SET button, see camera-based cruise control 139
SET button, see Cruise control 145
Settings, locking/unlocking 55
Settings, mirrors 69
Settings on the Control Display 30
Settings, storing for seat, mirror 69
Shift gate rotary switch 137
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 91

Shift point indicator, Head-Up Display 110
Side airbag 118
Signaling, horn 14
Signals when unlocking 56
Sitting safely 62
Size 256
Slide/tilt glass roof 60
SMS text messages, supplementary 98
Snow chains 216
Socket 169
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 230
Software update 37
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 220
Speed, average 105
Speed Limit Info 102
Speed Limit Info, onboard computer 105
Speed limits, display 102
Speed warning 106
Split doors 51
Split doors, opening with no-touch activation 50
Split doors via remote control 45
Split screen 24
Sport displays 106
Sport displays, Head-up Display 110
SPORT program, driving dynamics 138
Sport program, transmission 90
Stability control systems 135
Standard equipment 7
Standard view, Head-up Display 109
Stars, MINIMALISM display 193
Start/stop, automatic function 80
Start/Stop button 78
Starting the engine 79
Status control display, tires 122
Status information, onboard monitor 24
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 111
Steering wheel, adjusting 71
Steptronic Sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission 89
Steptronic transmission 89
Stopping the engine 80
Storage compartments 172
Storage, tires 211
Storing the vehicle 252
Stowing and securing cargo 176
Suitable devices 34
Suitable engine oil types 225
Suitable mobile phones 34
Summer tires, tread 209
Sun visor 169
Supplementary SMS text messages 98
Switch for driving dynamics 137
Switch-on times, parked-vehicle ventilation 164
Switch, see Cockpit 14
Symbols 6
Symbols in the status field 24

T

Tachometer 99
Tailgate, see split doors 51
Tail lights 236
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 7
Technical data 256, 259
Temperature, air conditioner 158
Temperature, automatic climate control 160
Temperature display for external temperature 99
Temperature, engine 105
Terminal, starting aid 243
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 56
Thigh support 64
Through-loading system 178
Tilt alarm sensor 57
Tilting, passenger's side mirror 70
Time 30
Time of arrival 105
Tire damage 210
Tire identification marks 208
Tire inflation pressure 202
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM 125
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 212
Tires, changing 210
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 212
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 202
Tires, run-flat tires 211
Tire tread 209
Tone, see Integrated Owner's Manual
Tools 231
Total vehicle weight 257
Touchpad 23
Touchscreen 22
Towing 244
Tow-starting 244
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 121
Traction control 136
TRACTION drive mode, driving dynamics 136
Transmission lock, releasing manually 92
Transmission, manual transmission 89
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 89

Transporting children safely 73
Tread, tires 209
Triple turn signal activation 84
Trip odometer 99
Trip onboard computer 105
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 99
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 152
Turn signal, front 233, 235
Turn signal, side 239
Turn signals, operation 84
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 236

U

Unintentional alarm 57
Units of measurement 31
Universal remote control 165
Unlocking, automatic 55
Unlocking, settings 55
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 251
USB connection 35
USB interface, position in vehicle 170
USB port, see USB interface 170
Use, intended 7

V

Vanity mirror 169
Vehicle battery 240
Vehicle battery, replacing 240
Vehicle, break-in 184
Vehicle care 250
Vehicle care products 250
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 10
Vehicle jack 218
Vehicle paint 250
Vehicle status 111
Vehicle storage 252
Vehicle wash 249
Vehicle, washing 249
Ventilation 163
Ventilation, refer to Parked-vehicle ventilation 164
VIN, see vehicle identification number 10
Voice activation system 27

W

Warning and indicator lights, see Check Control 95
Warning displays, see Check Control 95
Warning messages, see Check Control 95
Warning triangle 242
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 88
Washer nozzles, windshield 87
Washing the vehicle 249
Water on roads 185
Weights 257
Welcome lights 113
Welcome lights during unlocking 45
Wheel cleaner 251
Wheels, changing 210
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 202
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 125
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Window defroster, rear 159, 163
Windows, powered 58
Windshield cleaning system 85
Windshield defroster 159, 163
Windshield washer fluid 88
Windshield washer nozzles 87
Windshield wipers, fold-away position 87
Windshield wipers, see wiper system 85
Winter storage, care 252
Winter tires, suitable tires 211
Winter tires, tread 209
Wiper blades, replacing 231
Wiper fluid 88
Wiper system 85
Wood, care 251
Word match concept, navigation 21
Wrench 231

01 40 2 976 545 ue

DRIVE ME.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 976 545 - X/16